

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
18 December 2003 (18.12.2003)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 03/103677 A1

(51) International Patent Classification⁷: **A61K 31/55**,
C07D 405/12, 405/14, 417/12, 417/14, 409/14, C07K
5/02, A61K 31/554, A61P 29/00, 19/10

OH 45241 (US). **DEMUTH, Thomas, Posser, Jr.**; 10800
Stockbridge Lane, Cincinnati, OH 45249 (US).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US03/18367

(74) Agents: **REED, T., David** et al.; The Procter & Gamble
Company, 6110 Center Hill Road, Cincinnati, OH 45224
(US).

(22) International Filing Date: 10 June 2003 (10.06.2003)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
60/387,531 10 June 2002 (10.06.2002) US

(71) Applicant: **THE PROCTER & GAMBLE COMPANY**
[US/US]; One Procter & Gamble Plaza, Cincinnati, OH
45202 (US).

(72) Inventors: **WOS, John, August**; 7231 Welbeck Drive,
Maineville, OH 45039 (US). **WANG, Yili**; 4435 Place-
pointe Drive, Mason, OH 45040 (US). **OPPONG, Kofi,**
Abeka; 17 N. Timber Hollow Drive, Apt. 1723, Fairfield,
OH 45014 (US). **O'NEILL, Steven, Victor**; 5747 West
Fountain Circle, Mason, OH 45040 (US). **LAUFER-**
SWEILER, Michael, Christopher; 1464 Stableview
Circle, Maineville, OH 45039 (US). **SOPER, David,**
Lindsey; 5577 Red Fox Court, Mason, OH 45040 (US).
DE, Biswanath; 11269 Cornell Woods Drive, Cincinnati,

(81) Designated States (*national*): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT (util-
ity model), AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA,
CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ (utility model), CZ, DE (util-
ity model), DE, DK (utility model), DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE
(utility model), EE, ES, FI (utility model), FI, GB, GD, GE,
GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ,
LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN,
MW, MX, MZ, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU,
SC, SD, SE, SG, SK (utility model), SK, SL, TJ, TM, TN,
TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

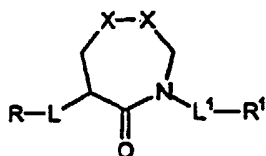
(84) Designated States (*regional*): ARIPO patent (GH, GM,
KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW),
Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM),
European patent (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE,
ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, RO,
SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM,
GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— with international search report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: DERIVATIVES OF AZEPINE AND THIAZERAN AS INTERLEUKIN CONVERTING ENZYME INHIBITORS



(I)

(57) Abstract: The present invention relates to interleukin - I β converting enzyme inhibitors of formula I: wherein each X is independently selected from: i) -C(W)₂-; ii) -C(O)-; iii) -NR²-; iv) -S-; v) -S(O)-; vi) -S(O)₂-; vii) two units, one from each adjacent X unit, can be taken together to form a substituted or unsubstituted double bond having the formula -CW=; wherein each W is hydrogen of a unit having the formula -(L²)_j-R², the index j is 0 or 1; R is a carbocyclic or heterocyclic aryl ring; R¹ is a cysteine trap; each R² is independently a suitable substituent; and L, L¹, and L² are linking units.



WO 03/103677 A1

DERIVATIVES OF AZEPINE AND THIAZERAN AS INTERLEUKIN CONVERTING ENZYME INHIBITORS

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to novel 7-member ring heterocycles that are Interleukin 1 β converting enzyme (ICE) inhibitors. The present invention also relates to pharmaceutical compositions comprising said inhibitors. The present invention further relates to methods for controlling one or more disease processes related to interleukin 1 β activity.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Cytokines, in general, are important signaling molecules that are essential to immune and inflammatory responses in mammals. Interleukin-1 β and IL-18 are key components of the cytokine network. IL-1 β stimulates the production of Tumor Necrosis Factor- α (TNF- α), and the combined action of IL-1 β , IL-18 and TNF- α induces further cytokine production, chemokine production, expression of cellular adhesion molecules, and increased vascular permeability. In addition, IL-1 β stimulates fibroblast differentiation and proliferation, the production of prostaglandins, collagenase and phospholipase by synovial cell and chondrocytes, basophil and eosinophil degranulation, and neutrophil activation. These mediators contribute to autoimmune and inflammatory disorders in many organ systems.

IL-1 β possesses diverse biological effects contributing to the pathogenesis of acute and chronic inflammatory and autoimmune diseases (CA Dinarello, *Blood*, (1996) **87**, 2095). For example, IL-1 β contributes to disease progression in rheumatoid arthritis and osteoarthritis, where it mediates inflammatory symptoms, contributes to the destruction of cartilage proteoglycan, and also contributes to bone loss in afflicted joints. IL-1 β overexpression also contributes to disease progression in atherosclerosis by regulating the expression and activation of matrix metalloproteases. Other conditions where IL-1 β plays a major role in pathogenesis include sepsis syndrome, inflammatory bowel syndrome, acute and chronic myelogenous leukemia, insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, osteoporosis, and periodontal disease.

The caspases are a family of structurally similar, intracellular cysteine proteases that play an important role in cytokine maturation and apoptosis. Caspase-1 (interleukin-1 β converting enzyme, ICE) is primarily responsible for key steps in immunity and the

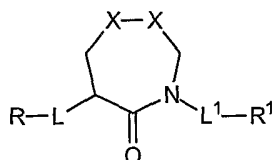
inflammatory response since it catalyzes the proteolytic cleavage of the pro-inflammatory cytokines pro-IL-1 β and pro-IL-18 to the bioactive forms IL-1 β and IL-18. Since IL-1 β triggers a multitude of biological responses and is implicated in the pathogenesis of many inflammatory diseases, as outlined above, the inhibition of ICE is a recognized target for therapeutic intervention. Therefore, ICE inhibitors have utility for the treatment of inflammatory diseases and autoimmune diseases, such as RA and OA. In addition, other caspases and related homologs of ICE appear to be involved regulating biological processes such as apoptosis. Therefore, inhibition of caspases also provides a recognized therapeutic approach for treating additional pathological conditions. Diseases where caspase inhibitors can provide therapeutic utility include neurodegenerative diseases (such as Alzheimer's, Huntington's, and Parkinson's diseases), ischemia, stroke, and trauma.

There is therefore a long felt need in the art for pharmaceutical compositions which comprise novel active ingredients for reversibly or irreversibly inhibiting Caspase enzymes resulting in the treatment of pathological conditions and diseases described further herein, *inter alia*, inflammation of joints and other forms of synovial tissue associated with osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis, Huntington's Disease, Alzheimer's disease, neuronal death, brain, intestinal or myocardial ischemia, reperfusion injury, endotoxic shock, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, multiple sclerosis, atherosclerosis, hepatitis, inflammatory bowel syndrome, shigellosis, meningitis, sepsis, acute and chronic myelogenous leukemia, insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, osteoporosis, and periodontal disease. Each of these disease states involves cytokine activity, which can be abated, controlled or otherwise mediated by the limiting or stopping the activity of one or more Caspase enzymes

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention meets the aforementioned needs in that it has been surprisingly discovered that certain 7-member ring heterocycles are effective for inhibiting Interleukin Converting Enzyme and thereby preventing, abating, or otherwise controlling the extracellular release of the 17 kD IL-1 β enzyme which is proposed to be the active component responsible for the herein described disease states.

The first aspect of the present invention relates to compounds which are capable of interfering with the release of the IL-1 β protease, said compounds having the formula:



wherein each X is independently selected from:

- i) $-\text{C}(\text{W})_2-$;
- ii) $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$;
- iii) $-\text{NR}^2-$;
- iv) $-\text{S}-$;
- v) $-\text{S}(\text{O})-$;
- vi) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- vii) two units, one from each adjacent X unit, can be taken together to form a substituted or unsubstituted double bond having the formula $-\text{CW}=\text{CW}-$; wherein each W is hydrogen or a unit having the formula $-(\text{L}^2)_j-\text{R}^2$, the index j is 0 or 1;

R is a carbocyclic or heterocyclic aryl ring;

R¹ is a cysteine trap;

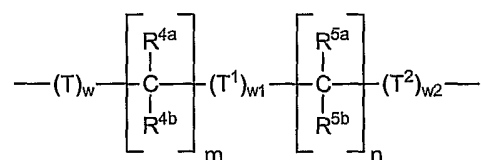
each R² is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) a hydrocarbyl unit having the formula: $-\text{C}(\text{R}^3)_2(\text{CH}=\text{CH})_q\text{R}^3$;
- iii) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^3$;
- iv) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{AR}^3$;
- v) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})[\text{C}(\text{R}^3)_2]_p(\text{CH}=\text{CH})_q\text{R}^3$;
- vi) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- vii) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{NR}^3\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- viii) $-\text{CN}$;
- xix) $-\text{CF}_3$;
- x) $-\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xi) $-\text{NR}^3\text{CN}$;
- xii) $-\text{NR}^3\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^3$;
- xiii) $-\text{NR}^3\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;

- xiv) $-\text{NHN}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xv) $-\text{NHOR}^3$;
- xvi) $-\text{NO}_2$;
- xvii) $-\text{OR}^3$;
- xviii) $-\text{OCF}_3$;
- xix) $-\text{F}$, $-\text{Cl}$, $-\text{Br}$, or $-\text{I}$;
- xx) $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$;
- xxi) $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$;
- xxii) $-\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xxiii) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^3$;
- xxiv) $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^3)\text{R}^3$;
- xxv) $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^3)_2$;
- xxvi) and mixtures thereof;

each R^3 is independently hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{20} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C_6 - C_{20} aryl, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl; Z is $-\text{O}-$, $-\text{S}-$, $-\text{NR}^3-$, and mixtures thereof; M is hydrogen, or a salt forming cation; the index p is from 0 to 12; the index q is from 0 to 12;

L, L^1 , and L^2 are each independently a linking group having the formula:



T , T^1 , and T^2 are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) $-\text{NR}^6-$;
- ii) $-\text{O}-$;
- iii) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- iv) $-\text{NR}^6\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- v) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^6-$; and
- vi) mixtures thereof;

R^6 is hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{10} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, C_6 - C_{10} aryl, C_7 - C_{12} alkylenearyl, and mixtures thereof; the indices w, w^1 , and w^2 are each independently 0 or 1;

R^{4a} , R^{4b} , R^{5a} , and R^{5b} are each independently:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) C_1 - C_4 linear, branched, and cyclic alkyl;
- iii) R^{4a} and R^{4b} or R^{5a} , and R^{5b} can be taken together to form a carbonyl unit;
- iv) two R^{4a} or two R^{4b} units from adjacent carbon atoms or two R^{5a} or two R^{5b} units from adjacent carbon atoms can be taken together to form a double bond;
- and
- v) mixtures thereof;

the index m is from 0 to 5; the index n is from 0 to 5.

Another aspect of the present invention relates to pharmaceutical compositions. The compounds of the present invention have improved oral bioavailability and this advantage is made use of by the second aspect of the present invention wherein the formulator can deliver the compounds of the present invention to a human or higher mammal by administering a composition comprising:

- a) an effective amount of one or more interleukin- 1β converting enzyme inhibitors according to the present invention; and
- b) one or more pharmaceutically acceptable excipients.

As described herein below, the compositions of the present invention are effective in controlling one or more interleukin- 1β converting enzyme inhibitor mediated or interleukin- 1β converting enzyme inhibitor modulated mammalian diseases or conditions.

A further aspect of the present invention relates to methods for controlling diseases or disease states which are related to or caused by the increased activity of one or more Caspase enzymes, *inter alia*, Interleukin- 1β Converting Enzyme (Caspase-1). The unmediated or uncontrolled activity of said enzymes can cause the release of higher levels of cytokines which exacerbate the disease state. The methods of the present invention control the amplification of IL- 1β and other cytokines which are capable of being released by controlling the initial release of IL- 1β .

Further, this invention relates to methods for treating diseases mediated by Caspase enzymes, including for example, acute and chronic inflammatory-mediated diseases, autoimmune diseases, destructive bone diseases, proliferative disorders, infectious diseases, and degenerative diseases.

In addition, this invention also relates to methods of treating diseases mediated by IL-1 β . Specifically, the subject invention relates to methods for treating pathological conditions and diseases, such as neuronal death, brain, intestinal or myocardial ischemia, reperfusion injury, endotoxic shock, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, multiple sclerosis, Parkinson's disease, Huntington's disease, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, hepatitis, inflammatory bowel syndrome, shigellosis, meningitis, sepsis, acute and chronic myelogenous leukemia, insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, osteoporosis, periodontal disease, rheumatoid arthritis (RA) and osteoarthritis (OA).

These and other objects, features, and advantages will become apparent to those of ordinary skill in the art from a reading of the following detailed description and the appended claims. All percentages, ratios and proportions herein are by weight, unless otherwise specified. All temperatures are in degrees Celsius ($^{\circ}$ C) unless otherwise specified.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to compounds which are interleukin-1 β converting enzyme inhibitors, said compounds comprising an 8,6-fused ring system. Interleukin-1 β is a cytokine released by a chemical reaction catalyzed by the enzyme Caspase-1 (ICE) and the present invention specifically targets the inhibition of Caspase-1. The compounds of the present invention are surprisingly specific for inhibiting Caspase-1 enzyme, as well as being modifiable for to have enhanced specificity for other Caspase enzymes.

The compounds of the present invention comprise three elements:

- i) 7-member ring scaffolds;
- ii) R units which are carbocyclic or heterocyclic rings attached by way of a linking unit to said scaffolds; and
- iii) R¹ units which are cysteine traps attached by way of a linking unit to said scaffolds.

The novel ICE inhibitors of the present invention have been surprisingly found to satisfy the specific size, shape, and binding requirement of the Caspase-1 active site and therefore are capable of reversibly or irreversibly inactivating the enzyme Caspase-1. However, the compounds of the present invention can also be modified within the

metes and bounds of the present invention to provide activity against other cysteine and serine protease enzymes as well.

The novel scaffolds of the present invention surprisingly position the selected R unit, encompassed within the description herein below, in a manner allowing for a propitious interaction between the novel compounds of the present invention and Caspase I.

The cysteine traps of the present invention can be chosen by the formulator to interact reversibly or irreversibly with the target Caspase enzyme. In general, these traps comprise a first reactive moiety and a second reactive moiety. The first reactive moiety is a carboxyl unit (or carboxyl unit precursor) which is believed to fit into a specific carboxylate docking site along the enzyme active site and in doing so bring the second reactive moiety into proximity with a cysteine amino acid residue which then reacts reversibly or irreversibly with the second reactive moiety rendering the enzyme inactive. The formulator, as described herein below, may select to reversibly or irreversibly (suicide inhibitor) inhibit the activity of the Caspase enzyme depending upon the type of cytokine related disease, treatment type, or regiment of therapy.

In addition, the formulator may use either the "bio-active" or "bio-equivalent" form of a cysteine trap depending upon the pharmaceutical composition, mode of delivery, and the like. For the purposes of the present invention, the term "bio-active" is defined herein as "the chemical form of a group, unit or moiety which interacts with the target enzyme." For the purposes of the present invention, the term "bio-equivalent" is defined herein as "a precursor form of the bio-active form of a group, unit or moiety which is readily converted to the bio-active form upon delivery into the host species being treated. The bio-equivalent form is also converted to the bio-active form prior to interaction with the targeted enzymes during *in vitro* testing."

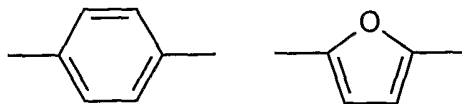
For the purposes of the present invention the term "hydrocarbyl" is defined herein as any organic unit or moiety which is comprised of carbon atoms and hydrogen atoms. Included within the term hydrocarbyl are the heterocycles which are described herein below. Examples of various unsubstituted non-heterocyclic hydrocarbyl units include methyl, ethyl, propyl, pentyl, 1-butenyl, 2,2-dimethylpentyl, 3-ethyl-3-methylpent-1-ynyl, 8,8-dimethylnon-3-enyl, and the like.

Included within the definition of "hydrocarbyl" are the aromatic (aryl) and non-aromatic carbocyclic rings. Non-limiting examples of substituted or unsubstituted aromatic and non-aromatic carbocyclic rings include cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, 1-ethyl-2-

methylcyclohexyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptanyl, cyclooctyl, octahydro-indenyl, 3,5-dimethyl-2,3,3a,4,5,6,9,9a-octahydro-1H-cyclopentacyclooctenyl, 4,6-dimethyl-1,2,3,4,4a,5,6,7,10,10a-decahydro-benzocyclooctenyl, phenyl, benzyl, 1-ethyl-2-methyl-benzyl, naphthyl, 3-methyl-1-propyl-naphthyl, indanyl, phenanthryl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalenyl, and the like.

The term "heterocycle" is included within the term hydrocarbyl and is described herein as a hydrocarbyl that contains one or more heteroatoms in the ring system. Heterocycle includes both aromatic (heteroaryl) and non-aromatic heterocyclic rings. Non-limiting substituted or unsubstituted examples include: pyrrolyl, 2H-pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, 2H-imidazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxazolyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 2H-pyranyl, 4H-pyranyl, 2H-pyran-2-one-yl, pyridinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, piperazinyl, 2H-1,3-oxazinyl, 1,4-oxazinyl, morpholinyl, azepinyl, oxepinyl, 4H-1,2-diazepinyl, benzofuranyl, indolyl, 1H-indolyl, benzoxazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl,, 2H-1,4-benzoxazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, furanyl, thiophenyl, benzimidazolyl, 6-amino-5-oxo-3,4,4a,5,6,7,10,10a-octahydro-1H-cycloocta[c]pyran-4-carboxylic acid, 6-amino-5-oxo-1,2,3,4,4a,5,6,7,10,10a-decahydro-cycloocta[c]pyridine-4-carboxylic acid, (2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester and the like.

The terms "arylene" and "heteroarylene" relate to aryl and heteroaryl units which can serve as part of a linking group, for example, units having the formula:



which represent an arylene and heteroarylene unit respectively.

The term "substituted" is used throughout the specification. The term "substituted" is defined herein as "encompassing moieties or units which can replace a hydrogen atom, two hydrogen atoms, or three hydrogen atoms of a hydrocarbyl moiety. Also substituted can include replacement of hydrogen atoms on two adjacent carbons to form a new moiety or unit." For example, a substituted unit that requires a single hydrogen atom replacement includes halogen, hydroxyl, and the like. A two hydrogen atom replacement includes carbonyl, oximino, and the like. A two hydrogen atom replacement from adjacent carbon atoms includes epoxy, and the like. Three hydrogen replacement includes cyano, and the like. The term substituted is used throughout the present specification to indicate that a hydrocarbyl moiety, *inter alia*, aromatic ring, alkyl chain, can have one or more of the hydrogen atoms replaced by a substituent. When a

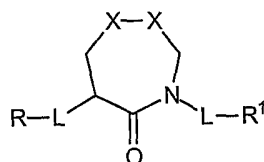
moiety is described as "substituted" any number of the hydrogen atoms may be replaced. For example, 4-hydroxyphenyl is a "substituted aromatic carbocyclic ring", (N,N-dimethyl-5-amino)octanyl is a "substituted C₈ alkyl unit, 3-guanidinopropyl is a "substituted C₃ alkyl unit," and 2-carboxypyridinyl is a "substituted heteroaryl unit." The following are non-limiting examples of units which can serve as a replacement for hydrogen atoms when a hydrocarbyl unit is described as "substituted."

- i) $-[C(R^6)_2]_p(CH=CH)_qR^6$; wherein p is from 0 to 12; q is from 0 to 12;
- ii) $-C(=Z)R^6$;
- iii) $-C(=O)OR^6$
- iv) $-C(=Z)CH=CH_2$;
- v) $-C(=Z)N(R^6)_2$;
- vi) $-C(=Z)NR^6N(R^6)_2$;
- vii) $-CN$;
- viii) $-C(=O)OM$
- ix) $-CF_3$, $-CCl_3$, $-CBr_3$;
- x) $-N(R^6)_2$;
- xi) -halo
- xii) $-NR^6C(=Z)R^6$;
- xiii) $-NR^6C(=Z)N(R^6)_2$;
- xiv) $-NR^6N(R^6)_2$;
- xv) $-NHOR^6$;
- xvi) $-OCF_3$, $-OCCl_3$, $-OCBr_3$;
- xvii) $-NO_2$;
- xviii) $-OR^6$;
- xix) $-NR^6S(O)_2R^6$
- xx) $-NR^6S(O)_2NR^6$
- xxi) $-SO_2N(R^6)_2$
- xxii) $-SO_2R^6$
- xxiii) $-SO_3M$;
- xxiv) $-OSO_3M$;
- xxv) $-OP(O)(OM)_2$;
- xxvi) $-P(O)(OR^6)_2$
- xxvii) $-P(O)(OM)_2$
- xxviii) $-OP(O)(OR^6)_2$

xxix) and mixtures thereof

wherein R^6 is hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{20} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, C_6 - C_{20} aryl, C_7 - C_{20} alkylenearyl, and mixtures thereof; M is hydrogen, or a salt forming cation; Z is O, S, NR^6 , and mixtures thereof. Suitable salt forming cations include, sodium, lithium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, ammonium, and the like. Non-limiting examples of an alkylenearyl unit include benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, 3-phenylpropyl, 2-phenylpropyl.

The compounds of the present invention include all enantiomeric and diastereomeric forms and pharmaceutically acceptable salts of compounds having the core scaffold represented by the formula:

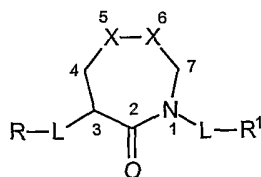


wherein each X is independently selected from:

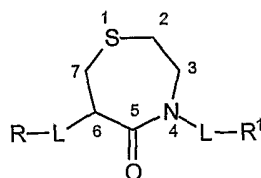
- i) $-C(W)_2-$;
- ii) $-C(O)-$;
- iii) $-NR^2-$;
- iv) $-S-$;
- v) $-S(O)-$;
- vi) $-S(O)_2-$;

vii) two units, one from each adjacent X unit, can be taken together to form a substituted or unsubstituted double bond having the formula $-CW=CW-$; wherein each W is hydrogen or a unit having the formula $-[C(R^3)_2]_jC(R^2)_3$, the index j is from 0 to 6.

The selection of X units, and combinations thereof, are determinative of the category into which each scaffold falls according to the present invention. For the purposes of the present invention, the following ring numbering system is used throughout the specification to identify the Interleukin 1β converting enzyme (ICE) inhibitors of the present invention when X does not comprise a ring heteroatom:

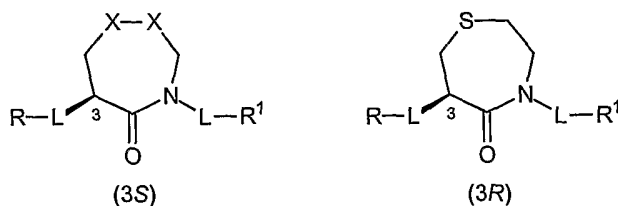


For rings comprising a heteroatom a different ring numbering system may be utilized, for example, a scaffold having the formula:



utilizes the above ring numbering system.

As it relates to the stereochemistry of the 7-member lactam ring scaffolds, the following stereochemical assignment is given for the 3-position (or other position if the X unit is a heteroatom comprising ring system) of the ring utilizing the ring numbering system described herein above. However, categories comprising X as S (sulfur) will have the “R” configuration at the 3-position, for example:

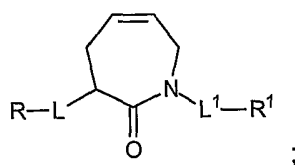


The analogs (compounds) of the present invention are arranged in several categories predicated on the form and substitution at the X units of the parent 7-member lactam ring system to assist the formulator in applying a rational synthetic strategy for the preparation of analogs which are not expressly exemplified herein. The arrangement into categories does not imply increased or decreased efficacy for any of the compositions of matter described herein.

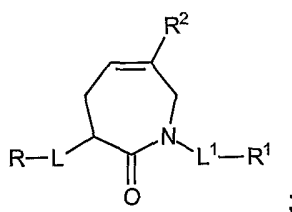
If necessary, the analogs (compounds) of the present invention are conveniently obtained in the salt form, for example, the trifluoroacetate salt. Also, the formulator, if convenient or practicable, can prepare a pro-drug which is capable of releasing the active compound (analog) upon uptake by the host. All of these variations are encompassed within the present invention.

As stated herein above, the form of the 7-member lactam ring system indicates into which category the compounds of the present invention fall. Non-limiting examples of ring systems according to the present invention include:

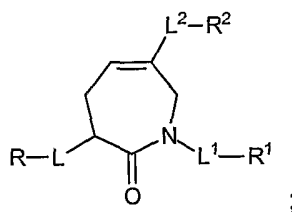
- i) 1,3-disubstituted 2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepine scaffold having the formula:



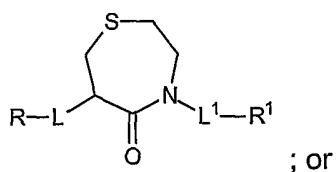
- ii) 1,3,6-trisubstituted 2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepine scaffold having the formula:



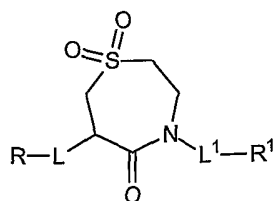
- iii) 1,3,6-trisubstituted 2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepine scaffold having the formula:



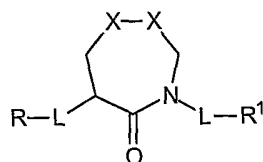
- iv) 4,6-substituted-[1,4]thiazepan-5-one scaffold having the formula:



- v) 4,6-disubstituted-1,1,5-trioxo-1λ⁶-[1,4]-thiazepine scaffold having the formula:



The compounds of the present invention include all enantiomeric and diastereomeric forms and pharmaceutically acceptable salts of compounds having the core scaffold represented by the formula:



further described herein below.

R is a carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring.

The first aspect of R relates to substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic rings.

The first embodiment of this aspect relates to substituted and unsubstituted aryl units, *inter alia*, phenyl and naphthyl rings. The first iteration of this embodiment relates to substituted aryl rings comprising at least one halogen atom, non-limiting examples of which includes 2-fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 3-fluoro-4-methylphenyl, 3-fluoro-4-methoxyphenyl, 3-chloro-2-methylphenyl, 3-chloro-6-methylphenyl, 3-chloro-4-methoxyphenyl, 3-chloro-4-hydroxyphenyl, 3,5-difluorophenyl, 2,6-dichlorophenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 3-chlorophenyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 3,4-dichlorophenyl, 3,5-dichlorophenyl, 3-chloro-4-fluorophenyl, 2-bromophenyl, 3-bromophenyl, 4-bromophenyl, and the like.

A second iteration of this embodiment relates to C₁-C₄ alkyl substituted aryl units non-limiting examples of which include 2-methylphenyl, 3-methylphenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 3,5-dimethylphenyl, 2-ethylphenyl, 3-ethylphenyl, 4-ethylphenyl, 3-ethyl-4-methylphenyl, 3-propylphenyl, 3-butylphenyl, and the like.

A third iteration of this embodiment relates to C₁-C₄ alkoxy substituted aryl units non-limiting examples of which include 2-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 2-ethoxyphenyl, 3-ethoxyphenyl, 4-ethoxyphenyl, 4-propoxyphenyl, 4-butoxyphenyl, 3,4,5-trimethoxy-phenyl, and the like.

A fourth iteration of this embodiment relates to amino substituted aryl units non-limiting examples of which include 3-aminonaphth-2-yl, 4-dimethylaminonaphth-1-yl, 2-aminophenyl, 3-aminophenyl, 4-aminophenyl, 3,4-dimethylaminophenyl, 4-amino-3-chlorophenyl, 4-amino-3,5-dichlorophenyl, 4-dimethylaminophenyl, 2-acetylaminophenyl, 3-acetylaminophenyl, 4-acetylaminophenyl, 4-isobutyrylaminophenyl, 4-propionylaminophenyl, 4-butylaminophenyl, 4-phenylacetylaminophenyl, 3,4-diacetylaminophenyl, 4-(N-acetyl-N-methylamino)-phenyl, 4-benzoylaminophenyl, and the like.

A fifth iteration of this embodiment relates to other substituted and unsubstituted aryl units non-limiting examples of which include 2-trifluoromethylphenyl, 3-trifluoromethylphenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 4-hydroxymethyl-phenyl, naphth-1-yl, naphth-2-yl, 4-biphenyl, 4-phenoxyphenyl, 4-(3-methyl-ureido)-phenyl, 4-sulfamoylphenyl, 3-acetylphenyl, 4-acetylphenyl, 3-hydroxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 4-benzyloxyphenyl, 4-methanesulfonyl-phenyl, and the like.

A second embodiment of this aspect relates to R units which are non-aryl carbocyclic units, *inter alia*, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclohexyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexenyl, cyclopentenyl, and the like.

The second aspect of R relates to substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic rings. The second embodiment of this aspect relates to other substituted and unsubstituted monocyclic heteroaryl rings, *inter alia*, thiophene, furanyl and pyrimidine rings. The first iteration of this embodiment relates to substituted and unsubstituted monocyclic pyridinyl systems, non-limiting examples of which include, pyridin-2-yl, pyridin-3-yl, pyridin-4-yl, 3-chloropyridin-2-yl, 4-chloropyridin-2-yl, 5-chloropyridin-2-yl, 6-chloropyridin-2-yl, 3-methylpyridin-3-yl, 4-methylpyridin-3-yl, 5-methylpyridin-3-yl, vinyl pyridin-4-yl, vinyl pyridin-3-yl, and the like.

The second iteration of this embodiment relates to other substituted and unsubstituted monocyclic heteroaryl ring systems, non-limiting examples of which include, thiophen-3-yl, thiophen-2-yl, pyrimidin-2-yl, pyrimidin-4-yl, pyrimidin-5-yl, 2-isobutoxy-pyrimidin-4-yl, 2-isobutylaminopyrimidin-4-yl, 2-phenoxy-pyrimidin-4-yl, 2-ethyl-5-methyl-2H-pyrazol-3-yl, 2,4-dimethyl-thiazol-5-yl, 5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl, 1H-imidazol-2-yl, [1,2,3]thiadiazol-5-yl, furan-2-yl, furan-3-yl, 4,5-dimethyl-2-furanyl, 5-bromo-2-furanyl, 2-phenylamino-pyrimidin-4-yl, and the like

The third iteration of this embodiment relates to substituted and unsubstituted heteroaryl fused ring systems, non-limiting examples of which include quinolin-2-yl, quinolin-3-yl, quinolin-4-yl, quinolin-5-yl, quinolin-8-yl, isoquinolin-1-yl, isoquinolin-3-yl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-quinolin-2-yl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-quinolin-3-yl, benzofuran-2-yl, benzofuran-3-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1H-indol-5-yl, benzo[b]thiophen-5-yl, benzo[b]thiophen-3-yl, benzo[b]thiophen-2-yl, 3H-benzotriazol-5-yl, 1-methyl-1H-indol-2-yl, 3H-benzimidazol-5-yl, 4-methoxy-quinolin-2-yl, thieno[2,3-b]thiophen-2-yl and the like.

A second embodiment of the heterocyclic ring aspect of R relates to substituted and unsubstituted non aromatic heterocyclic rings, non-limiting examples of which include pyrrolidin-1-yl, piperidin-1-yl, piperidin-4-yl, piperazin-1-yl, and the like.

Non-limiting examples of compounds according to the present invention which comprise the above identified R units include:

- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetra-hydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl} amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-6-meth-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-hydroxymethyl-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-hydroxymethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzoylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- N*-{4-[(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-5-oxo-1-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide; and
- N*-{4-[(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ^6 -[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide;

R¹ is a cysteine trap. The cysteine traps of the present invention can be in either the bio-active or the bio-equivalent form.

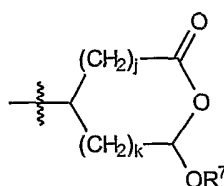
Without wishing to be limited by theory, the compounds of the present invention are capable of selectively inhibiting the activity of certain cysteine protease enzymes, *inter alia*, Caspase-1 enzyme (ICE). Although similar, the active sites of the various

cysteine proteases are different enough that although the mechanism of interaction between "cysteine traps" and the various cysteine protease enzymes may be roughly equivalent, the combination of a specific cysteine trap, scaffold, and R unit according to the present invention provides enhanced specificity for certain enzymes. Caspase-1, for example, is an enzyme which is capable of acting to release Interleukin-1 β which then diffuses out of the cell. Caspase-1 is believed to comprise an active site which comprises the thio (-SH) of a cysteine amino acid associated with at amino acid position 285 of the Caspase-1 enzyme. It is the thio moiety of this cysteine which reacts reversibly or irreversibly with the second reactive moiety of the cysteine traps which comprise the compounds of the present invention. It is therefore believed it is the R unit and 8,6-fused ring scaffold portion of the molecule which aligns the trap in a manner which is favorable to reacting with Caspase-1 enzyme over other cysteine proteases.

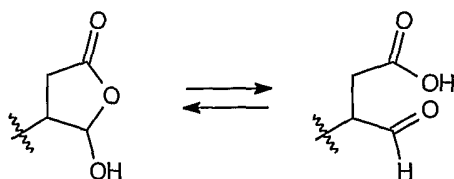
As stated herein above, the cysteine traps of the present invention may be reversible or irreversible traps. The following is a non-limiting description of cysteine traps according to the present invention.

Reversible Cysteine Traps

The first category of R¹ units are reversible cysteine traps, the first aspect of which relates to cyclic iterations of these traps and the bio-active and bio-equivalent embodiments thereof. These traps are referred to collectively herein as "lactol" cysteine traps whether said traps are in the bio-active form which interacts reversibly with cysteine protease enzymes or in the bio-equivalent form. These lactols have the general formula:

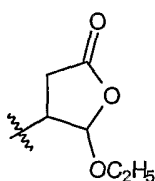


wherein R⁷ is hydrogen (bioactive form), C₁-C₄ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C₆-C₁₀ aryl and alkylenearyl, *inter alia*, phenyl, benzyl (bio-equivalent forms) and the indices j and k are each independently 0, 1, or 2. One iteration of this aspect relates to the aspartate traps, one of which has the following bio-active forms which exist in equilibrium depending upon the medium into which they are dissolved.



However, the bio-active form is the form which is present when enzyme inhibition occurs whether *in vitro* or *in vivo*.

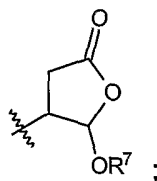
An example of a bio-equivalent form of this trap has the formula:



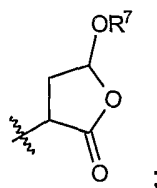
and which must be reverted to the above described bio-active form prior to interaction with the target enzyme.

Non-limiting examples of the bio-active and bio-equivalent forms of suitable cysteine traps which comprise the first aspect of R¹ units include:

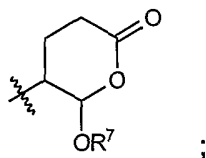
a)



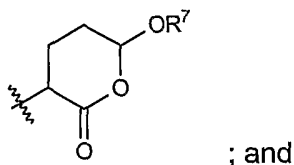
b)



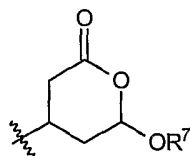
c)



d)

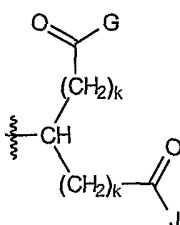


e)



wherein R^7 is the same as defined herein above. As described herein below, the bio-equivalent forms of the aspartyl or glutamyl traps can be prepared according to Chapman, K.T. *Bioorganic Med. Chem. Lett.*, 2(6), **1992**, pp. 613-618. included herein by reference.

A second aspect of R^1 units, which are reversible cysteine traps, relates to open form embodiments of said traps having the formula:

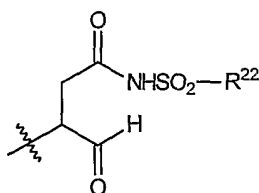


wherein G is $-OH$ or a labile unit and J is a unit selected from the group:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) substituted or unsubstituted aryl;
- iii) substituted or unsubstituted alkylenearyl;
- iv) substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl;
- v) $-CH_2N(R^{21})_2$;
- vi) $-C(O)R^{21}$;
- vii) $-C(O)N(R^{21})_2$; and
- viii) $-C(O)OR^{21}$;

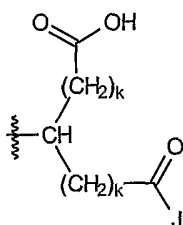
R^{21} is hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted alkylenearyl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl.

The first iteration of this second aspect encompasses reversible cysteine traps, wherein the first reactive moiety (carboxylate unit) comprises a unit having the formula:



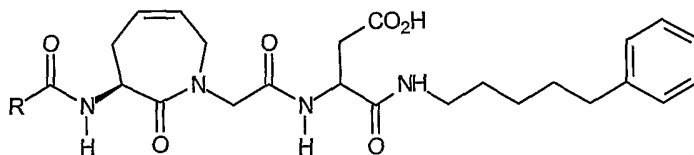
wherein R^{22} is C_1 - C_4 alkyl.

A second iteration of this aspect relates to cysteine traps wherein G is a -OH moiety, said traps having the general formula:



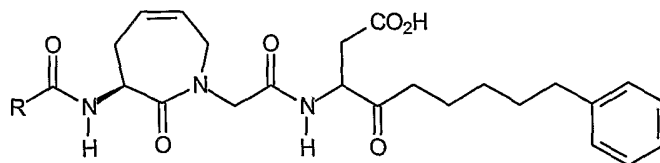
wherein J is an alkylenearyl unit having the formula $-(CH_2)_uR^{23}$; R^{23} is a substituted or unsubstituted aryl unit, *inter alia*, phenyl, naphthyl, and the like; the index u is from 0 to 10. Non-limiting examples of suitable J units include alkylenearyl units wherein the index u is selected from the group consisting of 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5: benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, 3-phenylpropyl, 4-phenylbutyl, and 5-phenylpentyl.

A further iteration of this aspect relates to cysteine traps wherein J is a unit having the formula $-N(R^{21})_2$ and one R^{21} is hydrogen and the other is an alkylenearyl unit. A non-limiting example of a generic Category I scaffold coupled to a cysteine trap encompassed by this embodiment has the formula:



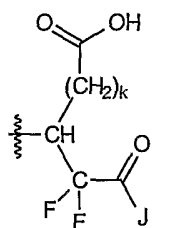
wherein R is the same as defined herein above.

A third iteration of this aspect relates to cysteine traps wherein J is an alkylenearyl unit. A non-limiting example of a generic Category I scaffold coupled to a cysteine trap encompassed by this embodiment has the formula:

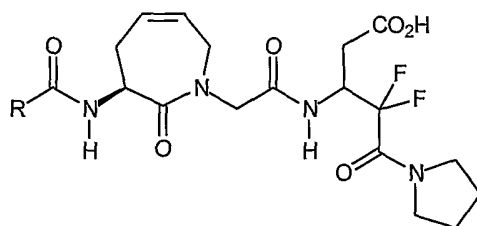


wherein R is the same as defined herein above.

A third aspect of R^1 units which are reversible cysteine traps relates to α,α -difluoro ketones having the formula:

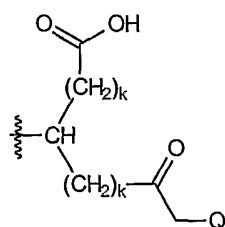


A non-limiting example of a generic Category I scaffold coupled to a α,α -difluoro ketone cysteine trap encompassed by this aspect has the formula:



wherein R is the same as defined herein above.

The second category of R^1 units encompasses irreversible binding cysteine traps. These traps act in a manner described in and known throughout the prior art as "suicide" binding units because of their irreversible effect in stopping an enzyme from maintaining activity or maturing the release of cytokines. The first aspect of this category are carboxy methylene units having the formula:



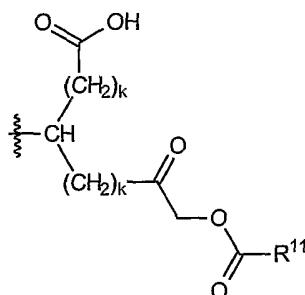
wherein Q is a leaving group selected from:

- i) substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic or heteroaryl;
- ii) $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{11}$;
- iii) $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{R}^{12}$;
- iv) $-\text{ONR}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$;
- v) halogen;
- vi) $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{14}$;
- vii) $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{NHR}^{15}$;
- ix) $-\text{OR}^{16}$;
- x) $-\text{SR}^{17}$;

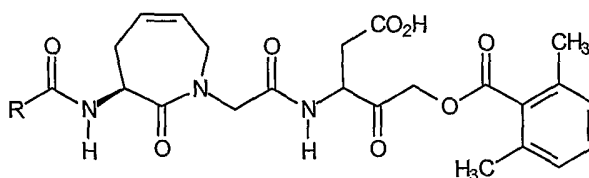
- xi) $-\text{SSR}^{18}$;
- xii) $-\text{SSO}_3\text{R}^{19}$; and
- xiii) $-\text{OP}(\text{O})(\text{R}^{20})_2$;

wherein R^{11} is $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ aryl, for example, phenyl, naphtha-1-yl; $\text{C}_7\text{-C}_{20}$ alkylenearyl, for example, benzyl; $-\text{NHR}^{24}$; R^{24} is $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ alkyl; R^{12} is $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{12}$ linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl; R^{13} is hydrogen, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ aryl, substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_7\text{-C}_{20}$ alkylenearyl, or two R^{13} units can be taken together to form a fused or no-fused ring having from 3 to 12 atoms; R^{14} is substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ aryl or substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_7\text{-C}_{20}$ alkylenearyl; R^{15} is $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_7\text{-C}_{20}$ alkylenearyl; R^{16} is $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ alkyl; R^{17} and R^{18} are substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_7\text{-C}_{20}$ alkylenearyl; R^{19} is hydrogen, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4$ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_7\text{-C}_{20}$ alkylenearyl; R^{20} is substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_6\text{-C}_{10}$ aryl, and substituted or unsubstituted $\text{C}_7\text{-C}_{20}$ alkylenearyl.

The first aspect of this category of irreversible cysteine traps relates to acyloxy ketones having the formula:

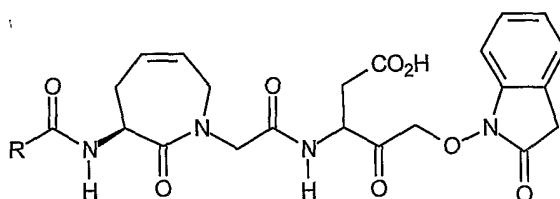


wherein R^{11} is a substituted aryl unit, for example, 2,6-dimethylphenyl, 2,6-dichlorophenyl, and the like; the index k is the same as defined herein above. A non-limiting example of a generic Category I scaffold coupled to a cysteine trap encompassed by this aspect has the formula:



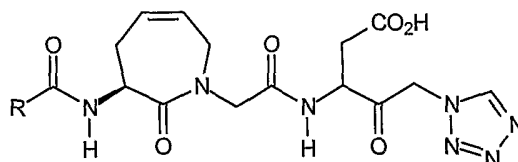
wherein R is the same as defined herein above.

A further aspect relates to cysteine traps wherein J is a unit having the formula – $\text{ONR}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$ wherein two R^{13} units can be taken together to form a fused. A non-limiting example of a generic Category I scaffold coupled to a cysteine trap encompassed by this embodiment has the formula:



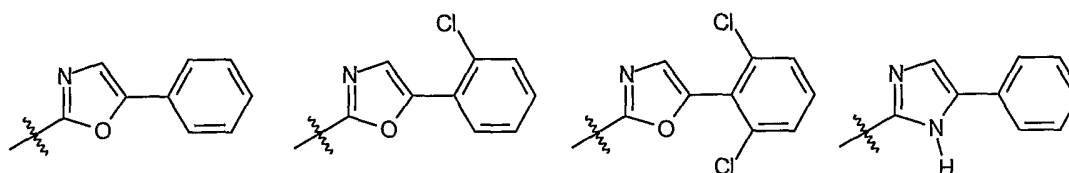
wherein R is the same as defined herein above.

A third aspect of Category II cysteine traps relates to units wherein Q is a substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic or heteroaryl unit. A non-limiting example of a generic Category I scaffold coupled to a cysteine trap encompassed by this embodiment has the formula:

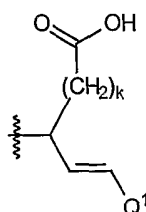


wherein R is the same as defined herein above.

Other heteroaryl units include substituted and unsubstituted isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, and isoxazoliny. Non-limiting examples include:

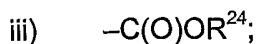


The second aspect of R^1 units encompassing irreversible binding cysteine traps are unsaturated compounds having the formula:

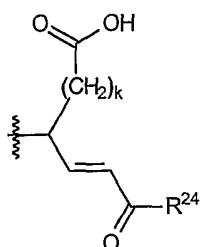


wherein Q^1 is a unit having the formula:

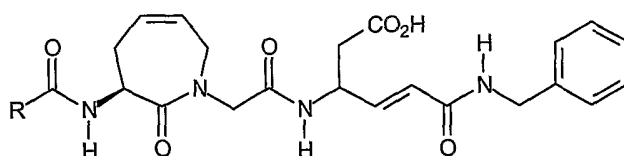
- i) $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{24}$;
- ii) $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{24})_2$; or



the first iteration of which has the formula:

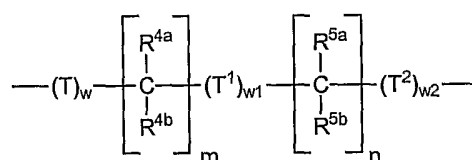


wherein R^{24} is $-\text{OR}^{25}$ or $-\text{NHR}^{25}$ wherein R^{25} is substituted or unsubstituted C_6 - C_{10} aryl or substituted or unsubstituted C_7 - C_{20} alkylenearyl. A non-limiting example of a generic Category II scaffold coupled to a cysteine trap encompassed by this iteration of the second aspect of R^1 units encompassing irreversible binding cysteine traps has the formula:



wherein R is the same as defined herein above and X is $-\text{NR}^9$ as defined herein above.

L , L^1 , and L^2 are linking groups which serve to link the R , R^1 , and R^2 units to the main 7-member ring scaffold, said linking groups having the formula:



T , T^1 , and T^2 are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) $-\text{NR}^6$;
- ii) $-\text{O}$;
- iii) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2$;
- iv) $-\text{NR}^6\text{S}(\text{O})_2$;
- v) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^6$; and
- vi) mixtures thereof;

w , w^1 , and w^2 are each independently 0 or 1.

R^{3a} , R^{3b} , R^{4a} , and R^{4b} are each independently

- i) hydrogen;

- ii) C₁-C₄ linear, branched, and cyclic alkyl;
- iii) R^{3a} and R^{3b} or R^{4a}, and R^{4b} can be taken together to form a carbonyl unit;
- iv) two R^{3a} or two R^{3b} units from adjacent units or two R^{4a} or two R^{4b} units from adjacent units can be taken together to form a double bond; and
- v) mixtures thereof;

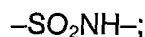
R⁶ is hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C₁-C₁₀ linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, C₆-C₁₀ aryl, C₇-C₁₂ alkylenearyl, and mixtures thereof; the index m is from 0 to 5; the index n is from 0 to 5; the indices w, w¹, and w² are each independently 0 or 1. Each value of the indices m and n represent a distinct -C(R^{3a}R^{3b})- or -C(R^{4a}R^{4b})- unit. As described further herein below, a first -C(R^{3a}R^{3b})- may define a carbonyl unit in the linking unit while a second -C(R^{3a}R^{3b})- unit may be defined as a methylene unit: -CH₂-.

Examples of linking units according to the present invention include L units wherein:

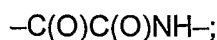
- i) the indices n, w, and w² are each equal to 0; w¹ is equal to 1, T¹ is -NH-, m is equal to 1, R^{3a} and R^{3b} are taken together to form a carbonyl unit, said L unit having the formula:



- ii) the indices m, n, and w are each equal to 0; w¹ and w² are equal to 1, T¹ is -SO₂- and T² is equal to -NH-, said L unit having the formula:



- iii) the indices w and w¹ are each equal to 0; w² is equal to 1, T² is -NH-, m and n are each equal to 1, R^{3a} and R^{3b} are taken together to form a carbonyl unit; and R^{4a} and R^{4b} are taken together to form a carbonyl unit, said L unit having the formula:



- iv) the indices m, n, w and w² are each equal to 0; w¹ is equal to 1, T¹ is -NH-, said L unit having the formula:



- v) the indices m and w are each equal to 0; w¹ and w² are each equal to 1, T¹ and T² are each -NH-, n is equal to 1, R^{4a} and R^{4b} are taken together to form a carbonyl unit, said L unit having the formula:



- vi) the indices m and w are each equal to 0; w^1 and w^2 are each equal to 1, T^1 is equal to $-O-$; T^2 is equal to $-NH-$, n is equal to 1, R^{4a} and R^{4b} are taken together to form a carbonyl unit, said L unit having the formula:

$$-OC(O)NH-$$
- vii) the indices w and w^1 are each equal to 0; the index w^2 is equal to 1; T^2 is equal to $-NH-$; m is equal to 2, each R^{3a} and R^{3b} unit is hydrogen; n is equal to 1, R^{4a} and R^{4b} are taken together to form a carbonyl unit, said L unit having the formula:

$$-CH_2CH_2C(O)NH-$$
- viii) the indices w and w^1 are each equal to 0; the index w^2 is equal to 1; T^2 is equal to $-NH-$; m is equal to 2, each R^{3a} unit is hydrogen, R^{3b} from the first unit and R^{3b} from the second unit are taken together to form a double bond; n is equal to 1, R^{4a} and R^{4b} are taken together to form a carbonyl unit, said L unit having the formula:

$$-CH=CHC(O)NH-$$
- ix) the indices w and w^2 are each equal to 1; the index w^1 is equal to 0; m and n are equal to 1; T and T^2 are equal to $-NH-$; R^{4a} is equal to the side chain of a d or l naturally occurring α -amino acid; R^{4b} is equal to hydrogen; R^{5a} and R^{5b} are taken together to form a carbonyl unit, said L unit having the formula:

$$-NH-CH(R^{4a})-C(=O)NH-$$

L^1 units are formed in the same manner and can comprise the same or different units than L. For example, when L is $-C(O)NH-$, the unit L^1 can also be $-C(O)NH-$; and L^2 if present can be any compatible unit.

L^2 units are formed in the same manner and can comprise the same or different units than L and L^1 . L^2 units are present when W is $-(L^2)_j-R^2$, and j is equal to 1; said units further described herein below.

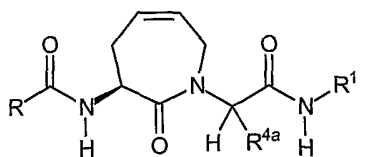
The first aspect of linking units relates to the groups selected from the group consisting of:

- i) $-C(O)NH-$;
- ii) $-CH_2C(O)NH-$;
- iii) $-NHC(O)-$;
- iv) $-NHC(O)NH-$;
- v) $-C(O)C(O)-$;

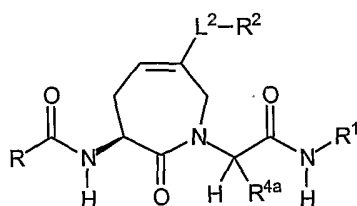
- vi) $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$;
- vii) $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$;
- viii) $-\text{OC}(\text{O})-$;
- ix) $-\text{NH}-$;
- x) $-\text{NHS}(\text{O})_2-$;
- xi) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NH}-$;
- xii) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- xii) $-\text{NHCH}(\text{R}^{4a})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$;
- xiv) and mixtures thereof.

The following are non-limiting iterations of the first aspect of linking units.

A first iteration of the linking units which comprise the first aspect of linking units, relates to compounds having the following scaffolds comprising L and L^1 units, wherein L is equal to $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$ and L^1 is equal to $-\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$; for example, compounds having the formula:

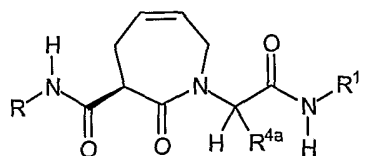


A second iteration of the linking units which comprise the first aspect of linking units, relates to compounds having the following scaffold comprising L, L^1 , and L^2 units, wherein L is equal to $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$, L^1 is equal to $-\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$ and L^2 is present (j is equal to 1); for example, a 1,3,6-trisubstituted 2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepine scaffold having the formula::

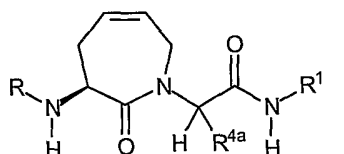


and L^2 can be any unit of the first aspect, *inter alia*, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$; and $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$.

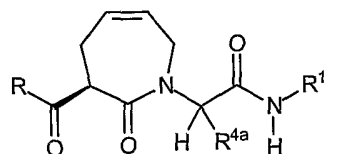
A third iteration of the linking units which comprise the first aspect of linking units, relates to compounds having the following scaffold comprising L and L^1 units, wherein L is equal to $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})-$ and L^1 is equal to $-\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$; for example, compounds having the formula:



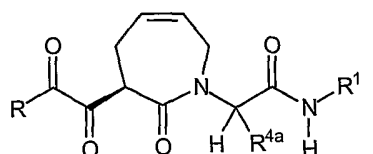
A fourth iteration of the linking units which comprise the first aspect of linking units, relates to compounds having the following scaffold comprising L and L¹ units, wherein L is equal to -NH- and L¹ is equal to -CH₂C(O)NH-; for example, compounds having the formula:



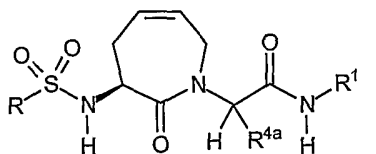
A fifth iteration of the linking units which comprise the first aspect of linking units, relates to compounds having the following scaffold comprising L and L¹ units, wherein L is equal to -C(O)- and L¹ is equal to -CH₂C(O)NH-; for example, compounds having the formula:



A sixth iteration of the linking units which comprise the first aspect of linking units, relates to compounds having the following scaffold comprising L and L¹ units, wherein L is equal to -C(O)C(O)- and L¹ is equal to -CH₂C(O)NH-; for example, compounds having the formula:



A seventh iteration of the linking units which comprise the first aspect of linking units, relates to compounds having the following scaffold comprising L and L¹ units, wherein L is equal to -SO₂NH- and L¹ is equal to -CH₂C(O)NH-; for example, compounds having the formula:



The following are examples of compounds which comprise iterations 1-7 of the second aspect of linking units as disclosed in the general figures herein above.

- i) Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-[1-(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-7-oxo-cyclohept-3-enyl}-amide;
- ii) Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {4-(benzoylamino-methyl)-6-[1-(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-7-oxo-cyclohept-3-enyl}-amide;
- iii) 6-[1-(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-7-oxo-cyclohept-3-enecarboxylic acid isoquinolin-1-ylamide;
- iv) N-(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-2-[6-(isoquinolin-1-ylamino)-7-oxo-cyclohept-3-enyl]-propionamide;
- v) N-(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-2-[6-(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-7-oxo-cyclohept-3-enyl]-propionamide;
- vi) N-(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-2-[6-(2-isoquinolin-1-yl-2-oxo-acetylamino)-7-oxo-cyclohept-3-enyl]-propionamide; and
- vii) N-(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-2-[6-(isoquinoline-1-sulfonylamino)-7-oxo-cyclohept-3-enyl]-propionamide; and
- viii) N-(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-2-[6-(isoquinoline-1-sulfonylamino)-5-oxo-thiepan-4-yl]-propionamide.

R^2 units are substitutes on the 7-member ring when X is $-C(W)_2-$, or $-NR^2-$. Each R^2 is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) a hydrocarbyl unit having the formula: $-[C(R^3)_2]_p(CH=CH)_qR^3$;
- iii) $-C(=Z)R^3$;
- iv) $-C(=Z)AR^3$;
- v) $-C(=Z)[C(R^3)_2]_p(CH=CH)_qR^3$;
- vi) $-C(=Z)N(R^3)_2$;
- vii) $-C(=Z)NR^3N(R^3)_2$;
- viii) $-CN$;
- xix) $-CF_3$;
- x) $-N(R^3)_2$;
- xi) $-NR^3CN$;
- xii) $-NR^3C(=Z)R^3$;
- xiii) $-NR^3C(=Z)N(R^3)_2$;
- xiv) $-NHN(R^3)_2$;

- xv) $-\text{NHOR}^3$;
- xvi) $-\text{NO}_2$;
- xvii) $-\text{OR}^3$;
- xviii) $-\text{OCF}_3$;
- xix) $-\text{F}$, $-\text{Cl}$, $-\text{Br}$, or $-\text{I}$;
- xx) $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$;
- xxi) $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$;
- xxii) $-\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xxiii) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^3$;
- xxiv) $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^3)\text{R}^3$;
- xxv) $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^3)_2$;
- xxvi) and mixtures thereof;

each R^3 is independently hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{20} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C_6 - C_{20} aryl, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl; Z is $-\text{O}-$, $-\text{S}-$, $-\text{NR}^3-$, and mixtures thereof; M is hydrogen, or a salt forming cation; the index p is from 0 to 12; the index q is from 0 to 12

Category II compounds of the present invention comprise a R^2 unit which is C_1 - C_4 linear branched or cyclic alkyl.

Category III compounds of the present invention comprise an R^2 units which when taken together with L^2 form a unit $-\text{L}^2-\text{R}^2$ selected from the group consisting of benzyl, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{SH}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{SC}_6\text{H}_5$ and $-\text{CH}_2\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$.

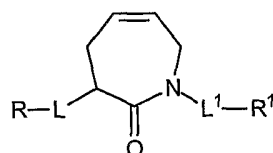
Another aspect of Category III compounds of the present invention comprise an R^2 units which when taken together with L^2 form a unit $-\text{L}^2-\text{R}^2$ selected from the group consisting of phenyl, 4-isopropylphenyl, 4-pentylphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 2-methylphenyl, 3-methylphenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 2-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, and 4-methoxyphenyl.

A yet further aspect of Category III compounds of the present invention comprise an R^2 units which when taken together with L^2 form a unit $-\text{L}^2-\text{R}^2$ selected from the group consisting of $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCOC}_6\text{H}_5$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}[4\text{-CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4]$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4\text{-}n\text{-pentylC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(2\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(3\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(2\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(3\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(2\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(3\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, and $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$.

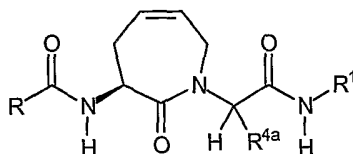
A fourth aspect of Category III compounds of the present invention comprise an R^2 units which when taken together with L^2 form a unit $-L^2-R^2$ selected from the group consisting of $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(4\text{-}n\text{-pentylC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(2\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(3\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(4\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(2\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(3\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(4\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(2\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(3\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, and $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(4\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$.

However, depending upon the selection of L^2 units or other ring variations, R^2 may include any iteration or embodiment described herein.

Category I interleukin-1 β converting enzyme inhibitors according to the present invention relates to compounds comprising a 1,3-substituted-1,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-2-one ring system scaffold having the formula:



the first aspect of which comprises scaffolds having the formula:



wherein R and R^1 are defined herein below in Table I.

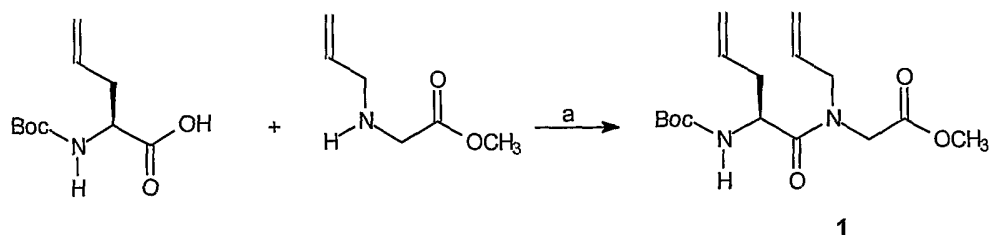
TABLE I

No.	R	R^1
1	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
2	3-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
3	4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
4	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
5	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
6	3-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
7	4-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
8	3-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl

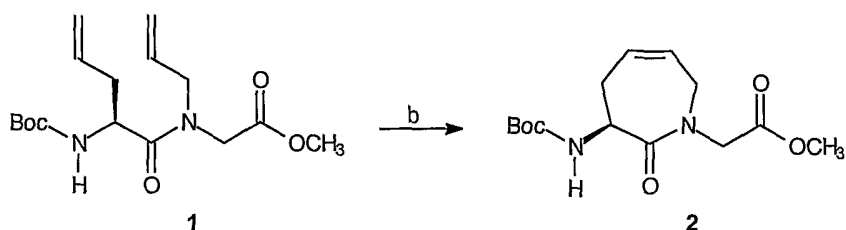
9	4-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
10	3-benzoylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
11	1-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
12	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
13	2-quinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
14	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
15	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
16	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
17	3-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
18	4-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
19	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
20	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
21	3-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
22	4-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
23	3-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
24	4-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
25	3-benzoylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
26	1-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
27	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
28	2-quinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
29	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
30	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl

The compounds of Category I can be suitably prepared by the procedure outlined herein below utilizing intermediate **3** which can be synthesized by the procedure described in Scheme I.

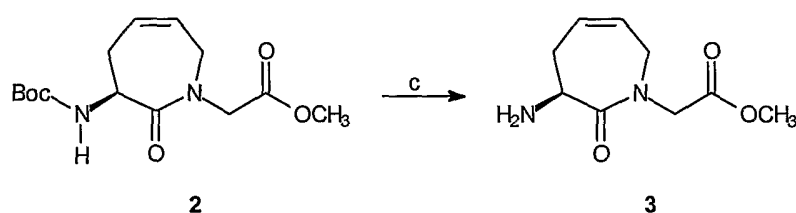
Scheme I



Reagents and Conditions: a) DCC, DMAP, DCM, rt 1 hr.



Reagents and Conditions: b) Grubbs catalyst; CH₂Cl₂, 40 °C, 12-15 hrs.



Reagents and conditions: c) TFA, CH₂Cl₂.

Preparation of [allyl-(2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-pent-4-enoyl)amino]acetic acid methyl ester (1): A flask is charged with N-Boc-allylglycine methyl ester (0.65 g, 3 mmol), 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (0.62 g, 3 mmol), dimethylaminopyridine (10 mg) and dichloromethane (50 mL). N-Allyl glycine methyl ester (1.29 g, 10 mmol) is dissolved in dichloromethane (20 mL) and added dropwise to the solution. The resulting reaction mixture is stirred an additional hour. The reaction was filtered to remove the precipitate and the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product is purified over silica gel to afford the desired product.

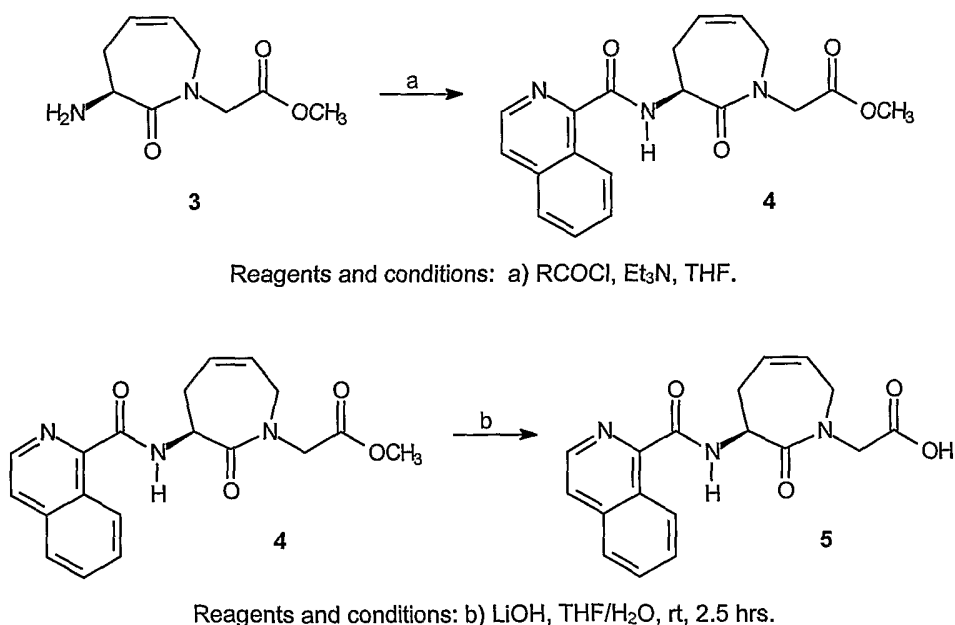
Preparation of (3-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-1-yl) acetic acid methyl ester (2): Grubbs catalyst (0.3 g) is added to a solution of [allyl-(2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-pent-4-enoyl)amino]acetic acid methyl ester, 1, (0.815 g, 2.5 mmol) in 50 mL of CH₂Cl₂. The solution is refluxed for 12 hours after which additional catalyst (0.29 g) is added and the solution is refluxed for another 3 hours. The solution is then cooled, 1 mL of DMSO is added, and stirring continued at room temperature for an additional 12 hours. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified over silica gel to afford the desired product.

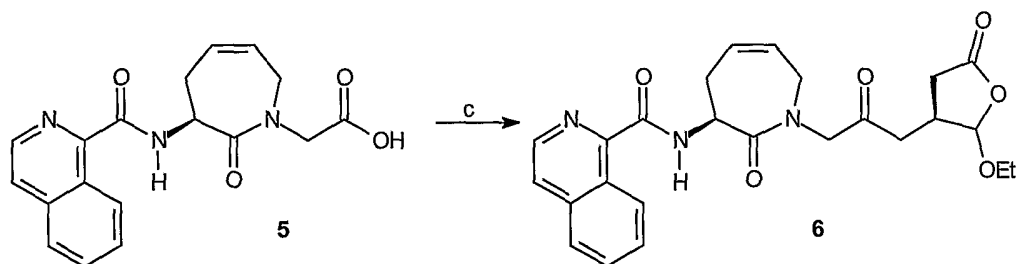
Preparation of (3-amino-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-1-yl) acetic acid methyl ester

methyl ester (3): A solution containing (3-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-1-yl) acetic acid methyl ester, **2**, (0.57 g, 2.0 mmol) in 10 mL of CH₂Cl₂ is treated with 2.5 mL of wet TFA and stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solution is concentrated *in vacuo* and treated with saturated NaHCO₃. Solid NaCl is added to the resulting aqueous solution and the solution is extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the desired intermediate which can be used without further purification.

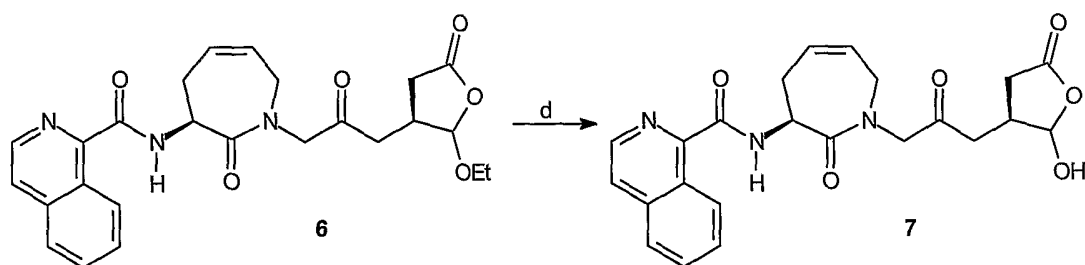
Intermediate **3**, prepared by the procedure herein above, can be reacted with a suitable reagent which introduces the selected R unit into the compound scaffold as described in Scheme II herein below.

Scheme II





Reagents and conditions: c) (2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-carbamic acid; N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid, $(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4\text{Pd}$, CH_2Cl_2 , EDCl , HOBT .



Reagents and conditions: d) TFA, acetonitrile/water.

EXAMPLE 1

isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl} amide (7)

Preparation of (3-[(isoquinolin-1-carbonyl)amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl) acetic acid ethyl ester (4): (3-amino-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-1-yl) acetic acid methyl ester, **3**, (0.365 g, 1.68 mmol) is dissolved in 1:1 $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{DMF}$ and 1-isoquinoline-carboxylic acid (1.4 g, 8.1 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.35 g, 2.6 mmol), and 1-(3-dimethyl-aminopropyl)-3-ethyl-carbodiimide hydrochloride (0.5 g, 2.6 mmol) are added. The resulting solution is stirred at room temperature for 12 hours, diluted with EtOAc , washed with saturated NaHCO_3 then brine, and dried (MgSO_4). The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the resulting residue is purified over silica gel ($\text{EtOAc}/\text{hexane}$) to afford the desired product.

Preparation of {3-[(isoquinolin-1-carbonyl)amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl} acetic acid (5): A solution of {3-[(isoquinolin-1-carbonyl)amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl} acetic acid methyl ester, **4**, (330 mg, 0.9 mmol) in 3:1 $\text{THF}/\text{H}_2\text{O}$ is treated with excess LiOH (360 mg, 8.6 mmol) and stirred for 2.5 hours at

room temperature. The solution is then acidified and the aqueous layer extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc layer is dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the desired product.

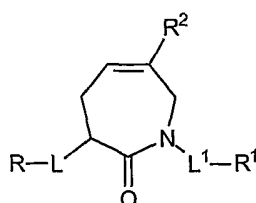
Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl} amide (6):

A catalytic amount of $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ is added to a solution of (2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester (338 mg, 1.48 mmol) and N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid (483 mg, 3.1 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (5 mL) at room temperature. The solution is stirred for 15 min then {3-[(isoquinolin-1-carbonyl)amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl} acetic acid, **5**, (178 mg) as prepared above is added as a solution in CH_2Cl_2 (1 mL) followed by 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (416 mg, 3.1 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethyl-aminopropyl)-3-ethyl-carbodiimide hydrochloride (584 mg, 3.1 mmol). The solution is stirred for an additional 3 hours, then diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO_3 , brine, dried (MgSO_4), and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the desired product in sufficient purity to be used directly.

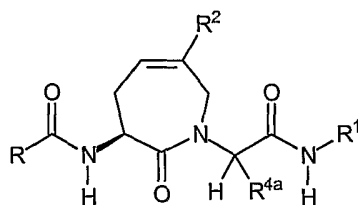
Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl} amide (7):

To a solution of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl} amide, **6**, from above in $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}/\text{H}_2\text{O}$ is added trifluoroacetic acid. After stirring for 30 minutes the solution is concentrated *in vacuo* and the crude product purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC to afford the desired product.

The compositions which comprise Category II of the interleukin- 1β converting enzyme inhibitors according to the present invention comprise a 1,3-substituted-1,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-2-one scaffold having the formula:



the first aspect of which comprises scaffolds having the formula:



wherein R, R¹, and R² are defined herein below in Table II.

TABLE II

No.	R	R ¹	R ²
31	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
32	3-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
33	4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
34	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
35	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
36	3-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
37	4-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
38	3-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
39	4-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
40	3-benzoylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
41	1-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
42	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
43	2-quinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
44	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
45	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
46	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
47	3-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
48	4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
49	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
50	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
51	3-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
52	4-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
53	3-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl

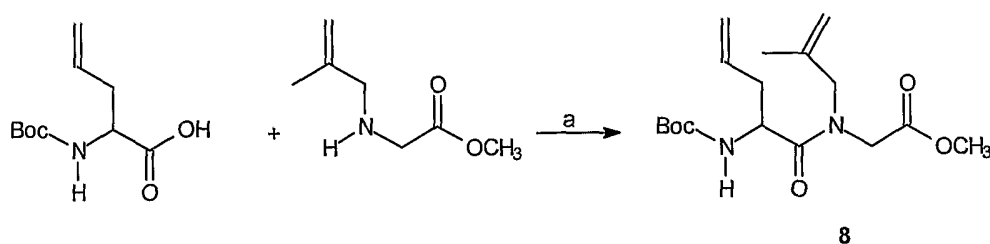
54	4-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
55	3-benzoylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
56	1-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
57	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
58	2-quinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
59	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
60	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
61	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
62	3-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
63	4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
64	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
65	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
66	3-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
67	4-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
68	3-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
69	4-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
70	3-benzoylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
71	1-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
72	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
73	2-quinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
74	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
75	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
76	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
77	3-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
78	4-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
79	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
80	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
81	3-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
82	4-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
83	3-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
84	4-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
85	3-benzoylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
86	1-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl

87	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
88	2-quinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
89	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
90	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	methyl
91	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
92	3-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
93	4-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
94	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
95	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
96	3-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
97	4-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
98	3-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
99	4-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
100	3-benzoylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
101	1-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
102	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
103	2-quinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
104	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
105	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	ethyl
106	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
107	3-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
108	4-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
109	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
110	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
111	3-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
112	4-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
113	3-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
114	4-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
115	3-benzoylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
116	1-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
117	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
118	2-quinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
119	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl

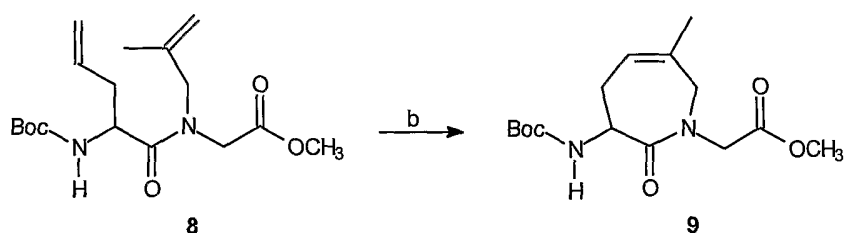
120	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	isopropyl
-----	-------------------	-------------------------------------	-----------

The ring scaffolds of this aspect of Category II of the present invention can be prepared by the procedure outlined herein below, utilizing intermediate **10**, as described in Scheme III

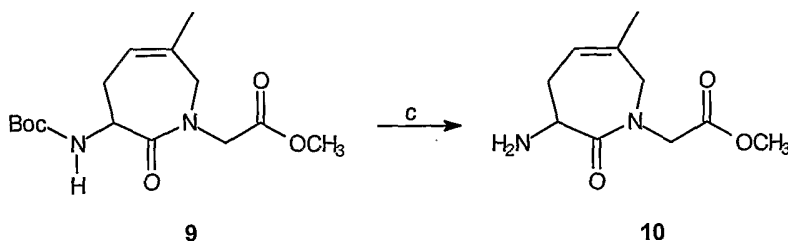
Scheme III



Reagents and Conditions: a) HOBt, EDCI, DCM, rt 2 hr.



Reagents and Conditions: b) "Super" Grubbs catalyst; CH₂Cl₂, 40 °C, 2 hrs.



Reagents and conditions: c) TFA, CH₂Cl₂.

The starting material, (2-methyl-allylamino)-acetic acid ethyl ester, for compound **8** can be prepared by the following method.

Ethyl bromoacetate (13.6 mL, 123 mmol) is dissolved in THF (20 mL) and cooled to 0 °C. 2-Methylallylamine (18.4 g, 259 mmol) is then added. After stirring at room temperature for 5 hours, the solvent is removed *in vacuo* and ether added to the residue.

The solid is collected by filtration and the resulting filtrate is concentrated *in vacuo* and purified over silica gel (ether) to afford 18 g (85% yield) of the desired product. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 4.88-4.84 (d, $J=10.2$ Hz, 2H), 4.22-4.15 (quartet, $J=7.2$ Hz, 2H), 3.37 (s, 2H), 3.18 (s, 2H), 1.83 (s, 1H), 1.74 (s, 3H), 1.30-1.25 (t, $J=7.2$ Hz, 3H); MS 158 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of [(2-*N*-Boc-aminopent-4-enoyl)-(2-methylallyl)amino] acetic acid ethyl ester (8): A solution containing (2-Methyl-allylamino)-acetic acid ethyl ester (0.507 g, 3.2 mmol), *N*-Boc-allylglycine (1 g, 4.8 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.87 g, 6.5 mmol), 1-(3-dimethyl-aminopropyl)-3-ethyl-carbodiimide hydrochloride (1.24 g, 6.5 mmol) and CH_2Cl_2 (20 mL) is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction is then diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO_3 , saturated NaCl, and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the crude product purified over silica gel (EtOAc/hexane) to afford 0.9 g (79% yield) of the desired product. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 5.87-5.71 (m, 1H), 5.32-5.29 (d, $J=8.7$ Hz, 1H), 5.23-4.81 (m, 4H), 4.73-4.66 (m, 1H), 4.52-3.81 (m, 6H), 2.59-2.50 (m, 1H), 2.43-2.34 (m, 1H), 1.75 (s, 3H), 1.44 (s, 9H), 1.33-1.23 (m, 3H); MS 355 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

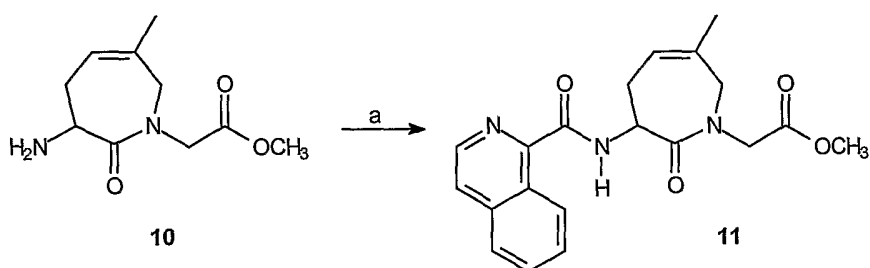
Preparation of (3-*N*-Boc-amino-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl)-acetic acid ethyl ester (9): Super Grubbs catalyst (tricyclohexylphosphine [1,3-bis(2,4,6-trimethylphenyl)-4,5-dihydroimidazol-2-ylidene benzylidene] ruthenium (IV) dichloride) (0.15 g) is added to a solution of [(2-*N*-Boc-aminopent-4-enoyl)-(2-methylallyl)amino] acetic acid ethyl ester, **8**, (0.45 g, 1.3 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (20 mL). After the solution is refluxed for 2 hours, DMSO (0.2 mL) is added and stirring continued for 12 hours. After removing the solvent *in vacuo* the crude product is purified over silica gel (EtOAc/hexane) to afford 0.32 g (78% yield) of the desired product. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 5.72-5.70 (d, $J=6.6$ Hz, 1H), 5.04-5.39 (m, 1H), 4.86-4.79 (m, 1H), 4.57-4.50 (d, $J=18.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.26-4.20 (d, $J=17.7$ Hz, 1H), 4.16-3.99 (m, 3H), 3.13-3.07 (d, $J=17.7$ Hz, 1H), 2.53-2.47 (d, $J=18$ Hz, 1H), 2.20-2.01 (m, 1H), 1.66 (s, 3H), 1.36 (s, 9H), 1.22-1.16 (m, 3H); ^{13}C NMR (CDCl_3) 173.0, 169.1, 155.1, 131.6, 131.6, 123.3, 79.6, 61.5, 52.1, 50.6, 50.3, 33.2, 28.4, 24.7, 14.2; MS 327 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of (3-amino-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-1-yl)-acetic acid ethyl ester (10): A solution containing (3-*N*-Boc-amino-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl)-acetic acid ethyl ester, **9**, (0.2 g, 0.06 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (10 mL) is treated with wet TFA (2.5 mL) and stirred at room temperature for 30 min.

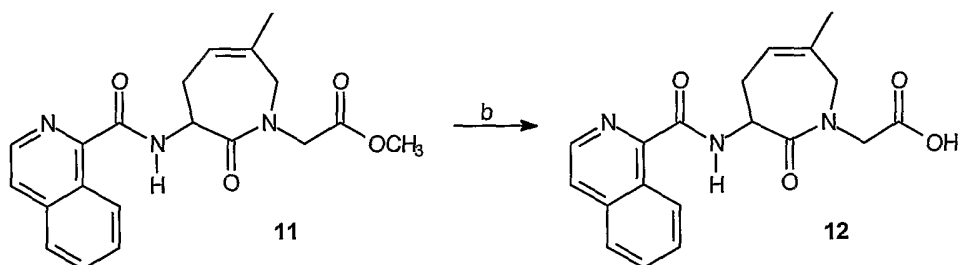
The solution is then concentrated *in vacuo* and treated NaHCO_3 . The resulting aqueous solution is further saturated with solid NaCl and extracted with EtOAc . The organic layer is dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent removed *in vacuo* to afford the desired product which is used without further purification.

Intermediate **10**, prepared by the procedure herein above, can be reacted with a suitable reagent which introduces the selected R unit into the compound scaffold as described in Scheme II herein below.

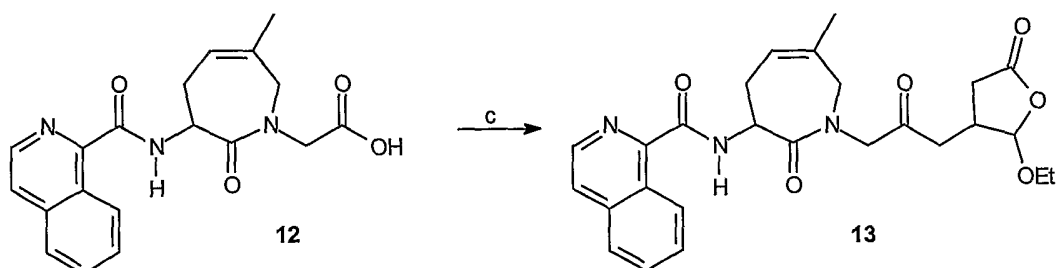
Scheme IV



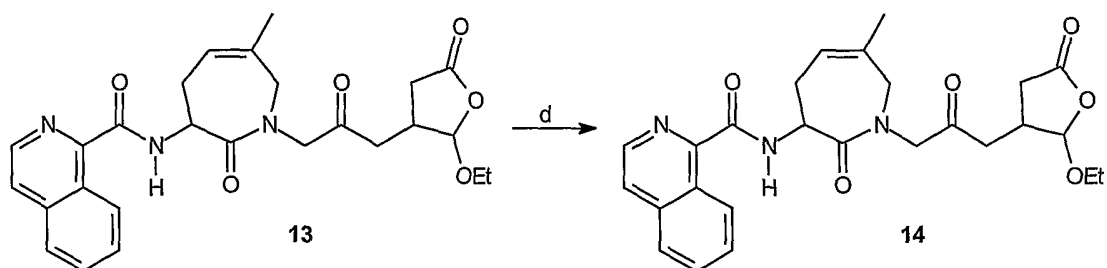
Reagents and conditions: a) RCO_2H , HOBT, EDCI, DMF.



Reagents and conditions: b) LiOH , THF/ H_2O , rt, 2.5 hrs.



Reagents and conditions: c) (2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-carbamic acid; N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid, $(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4\text{Pd}$, CH_2Cl_2 , EDCI, HOBT



Reagents and conditions: d) TFA, acetonitrile/water.

EXAMPLE 2

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-6-meth-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (14)

Preparation of {3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)amino]-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-1-yl}-acetic acid ethyl ester (11): The crude (3-amino-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-1-yl)-acetic acid ethyl ester, **10**, obtained in the previous step is dissolved in 6 mL of 1:1 DMF:CH₂Cl₂ and treated with 1-isoquinolinecarboxylic acid (0.24 g, 1.2 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.23 g, 1.5 mmol), and 1-(3-dimethyl-aminopropyl)-3-ethyl-carbodiimide hydrochloride (0.32 g, 1.5 mmol). The solution is stirred for 1 hour at room temperature, diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO₃, saturated NaCl, and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the crude isolate is purified by HPLC to afford 70 mg (30% yield) of the desired product. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 9.51-9.48 (d, *J*=8.1 Hz, 1H), 9.22-9.20 (d, *J*=6.9 Hz, 1H), 8.51-8.49 (d, *J*=5.4 Hz, 1H), 7.84-7.77 (m, 2H), 7.72-7.63 (m, 2H), 5.57 (bs, 1H), 5.48-5.40 (m, 1H), 4.775-4.715 (d, *J*=18 Hz, 1H), 4.24-4.19 (q, d, *J*=15.3, 7.5 Hz, 3H), 3.27-3.21 (d, *J*=18 Hz, 1H), 2.86-2.81 (d, *J*=16.5 Hz, 1H), 2.45-2.36 (d, d, *J*=15, 12.6 Hz, 1H), 1.79 (s, 3H), 1.30-1.25 (t, *J*=7.5 Hz, 3H); ¹³C (CDCl₃) 172.8, 169.2, 165.6, 148.2, 140.8, 137.5, 131.8, 130.5, 128.7, 127.7, 127.0, 124.5, 123.4, 61.6, 52.3, 50.8, 49.6, 32.6, 25.0, 14.3; MS 382 (M+H)⁺.

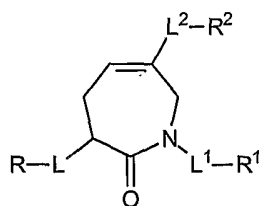
Preparation of {3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)amino]-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-1-yl}-acetic acid (12): A solution containing {3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)amino]-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-1-yl}-acetic acid ethyl ester, **11**, (70 mg, 0.28 mmol) in 3 mL of 3:1 THF/H₂O is treated with excess LiOH and stirred for 2.5

hours at room temperature. The solution is acidified and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc layer is dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the desired product which is used without further purification.

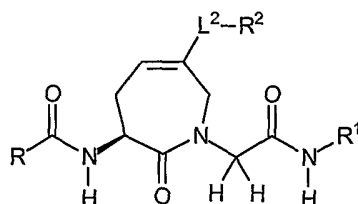
Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-6-meth-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (13): A catalytic amount of $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ is added to a solution of (2-ethoxy-5-oxo-furan-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester (118 mg, 0.51 mmol) and N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid (194 mg, 1.24 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (5 mL) at room temperature. The solution is stirred at room temperature for 15 min after which crude {3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)amino]-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepin-1-yl}-acetic acid, **12**, prepared in the previous step is added as a solution in 2 mL of 1:1 $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{DMF}$. 1-Hydroxybenzotriazole (64 mg, 0.48 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethyl-aminopropyl)-3-ethyl-carbodiimide hydrochloride (91 mg, 0.48 mmol) are then added. The solution is stirred for 5 hours, diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO_3 and brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the crude product which is purified over silica gel and used directly for the next step.

Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-6-meth-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (14): The isolated isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-6-meth-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide, **13**, from the previous step is treated with TFA in $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}/\text{H}_2\text{O}$. Work-up for neutral followed by purification via reverse phase HPLC affords 17 mg (20% yield) of the desired Interleukin 1β converting enzyme inhibitor. ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 9.24-9.21 (d, $J=8.7$ Hz, 1H), 8.55-8.53 (d, $J=6$ Hz, 1H), 8.01-7.96 (d, d, $J=8.7, 6.3$ Hz, 2H), 7.84-7.70 (m, 3H), 5.61 (bs, 1H), 5.53-5.47 (d, d, $J=11.7, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.84-4.78 (d, $J=18$ Hz, 1H), 4.68-4.62 (m, 1H), 4.37-4.17 (m, 3H), 3.48-3.39 (m, 1H), 2.81-2.65 (m, 3H), 2.59-2.40 (m, 3H), 1.86 (s, 3H); MS 453 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

The compounds which comprise Category III of the interleukin- 1β converting enzyme inhibitors according to the present invention relate to compounds comprising a 1,3,6-tri-substituted-1,3,4,7-tetrahydroazepine-2-one scaffold having the formula;



the first aspect of which comprises scaffolds having the formula:



wherein R, R¹, L² and R² are described herein below in Table III.

TABLE III

No.	R	R ¹	-L ² -R ²
121	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
122	3-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
123	4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
124	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
125	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
126	3-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
127	4-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
128	3-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
129	4-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
130	3-benzoylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
131	1-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
132	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
133	2-quinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
134	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
135	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
136	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
137	3-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
138	4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH

139	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
140	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
141	3-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
142	4-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
143	3-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
144	4-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
145	3-benzoylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
146	1-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
147	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
148	2-quinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
149	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
150	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
151	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
152	3-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
153	4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
154	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
155	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
156	3-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
157	4-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
158	3-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
159	4-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
160	3-benzoylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
161	1-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
162	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
163	2-quinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
164	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
165	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
166	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
167	3-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
168	4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
169	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
170	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
171	3-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅

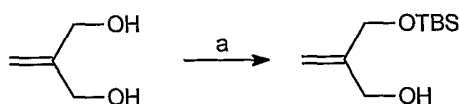
172	4-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
173	3-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
174	4-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
175	3-benzoylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
176	1-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
177	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
178	2-quinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
179	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
180	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
181	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
182	3-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
183	4-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
184	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
185	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
186	3-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
187	4-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
188	3-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
189	4-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
190	3-benzoylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
191	1-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
192	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
193	2-quinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
194	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
195	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	benzyl
196	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
197	3-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
198	4-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
199	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
200	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
201	3-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
202	4-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
203	3-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
204	4-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH

205	3-benzoylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
206	1-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
207	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
208	2-quinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
209	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
210	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ OH
211	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
212	3-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
213	4-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
214	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
215	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
216	3-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
217	4-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
218	3-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
219	4-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
220	3-benzoylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
221	1-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
222	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
223	2-quinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
224	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
225	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SH
226	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
227	3-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
228	4-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
229	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
230	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
231	3-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
232	4-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
233	3-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
234	4-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
235	3-benzoylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
236	1-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
237	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅

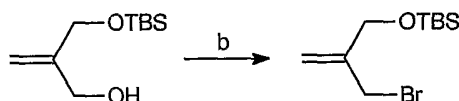
238	2-quinolinyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
239	1-isoquinolinyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅
240	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ SC ₆ H ₅

The compounds of Category III can be suitably prepared by the procedure outlined herein below, utilizing intermediate **15** which can be synthesized by the procedure described in Scheme V.

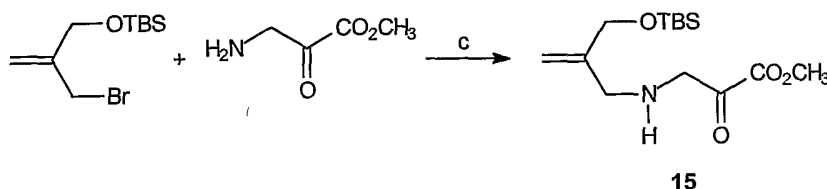
Scheme V



Reagents and conditions: (a) NaH, TBDMSCl, THF; rt, 2 hr.



Reagents and conditions: (b) (Ph)₃P/NBS, CH₂Cl₂; -15 °C, 15 hr.



Reagents and conditions: (c) Et₃N, DMF, rt 24 hr.

Preparation of 2-(*tert*-Butyl-dimethyl-silyloxymethyl)-prop-2-en-1-ol: Sodium hydride (0.46g, 11.3 mmol) is suspended in THF (20 mL) and 2-methylene-1,3-propanediol (1 g, 11.3 mmol) is added and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for 20 min by which time an opaque white precipitate forms. *tert*-Butyldimethylsilyl chloride is then added, and the solution vigorously stirred for 2 hours. The resulting mixture is poured into ether (50 mL), washed with 10% aqueous K₂CO₃, brine, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated *in vacuo* to yield a crude residue which is purified over silica to afford 1.6 g (70% yield) of the desired product as a clear oil. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.11-5.09 (m, 2H), 4.24 (s, 2H), 4.16 (s, 2H), 2.51

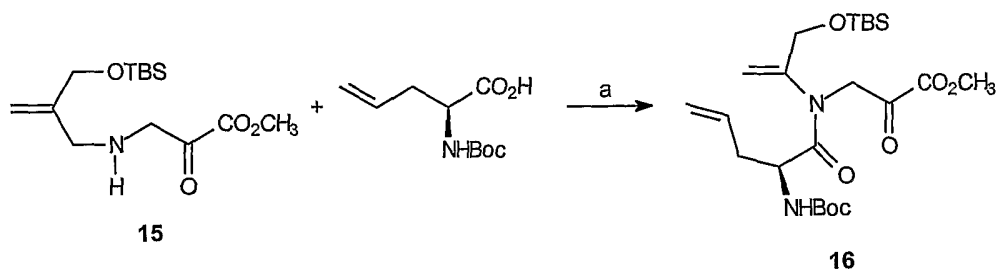
(s, 1H), 0.93 (s, 9H), 0.11-0.08 (m, 6H); ^{13}C (CDCl_3) δ 147.7, 111.0, 65.1, 64.5, 26.1, 18.5, -5.2; MS 203 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of (2-bromomethyl-allyloxy)-*tert*-butyl-dimethyl-silane: To a solution of 2-(*tert*-butyl-dimethyl-silanyloxymethyl)-prop-2-en-1-ol (0.335 g, 1.65 mmol) in dry CH_2CL_2 (5 mL), at -15°C are added triphenylphosphine (0.5 g, 1.90 mmol) and N-bromosuccinimide (0.3g, 1.65 mmol). After stirring at -15°C for 5 hours, the solution is added to a mixture of diethyl ether and water. The organic phase is washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), and purified over silica (EtOAc/hexane) to afford 0.17g (39% yield) of the desired product. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 5.27-5.25 (m, 2H), 4.29 (s, 2H), 4.03 (s, 2H), 0.98 (s, 9H), 0.38-0.28 (m 6H); ^{13}C (CDCl_3) δ 145.0, 115.0, 109.2, 64.1, 63.7, 32.9, 31.8, 26.1, 22.9, 18.5, 14.3.

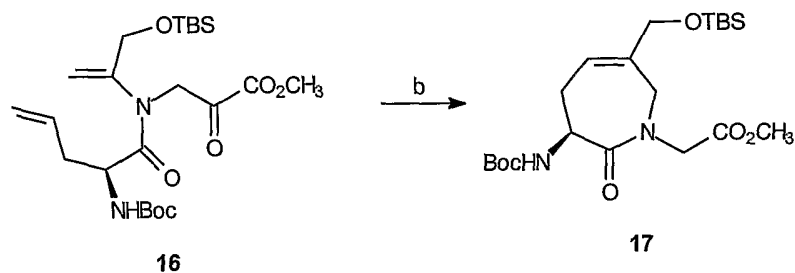
Preparation of [2-(*tert*-butyl-dimethyl-silaneloxymethyl)-allylamino]-acetic acid methyl ester (15): Glycine methyl ester hydrochloride (0.28 g, 2.26 mmol), triethylamine (0.63 mL, 4.54 mmol) and (2-bromomethyl-allyloxy)-*tert*-butyl-dimethyl-silane (0.24g, 0.91 mmol) are dissolved in DMF (5 mL) and stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. To this solution is added diethyl ether and water and the organic phase washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a crude residue which is purified over silica (EtOAc/hexane) to afford 0.107 g (43% yield) of the desired product. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 5.13 (bs, 1H), 5.4.99 (bs, 1H), 4.15 (bs, 2H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 3.25 (s, 2H), 1.71 (s, 1H), 0.90 (s, 9H), 0.06 (s, 6H); ^{13}C (CDCl_3) δ 173.1, 146.3, 111.1, 65.0, 51.9, 51.6, 50.0, 26.1, 18.5, -5.1; MS 274 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Intermediate **15**, prepared by the procedure herein above, can be reacted with a suitable reagent which introduces the selected R unit into the compound scaffold as described in Scheme VI herein below.

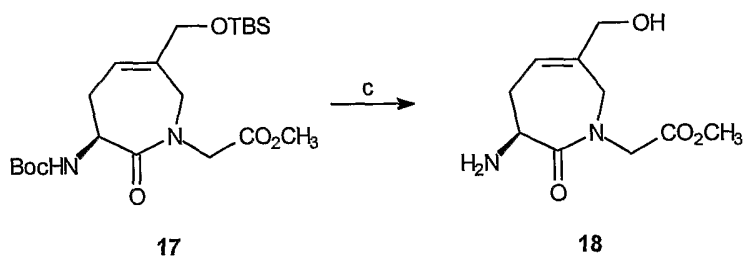
Scheme VI



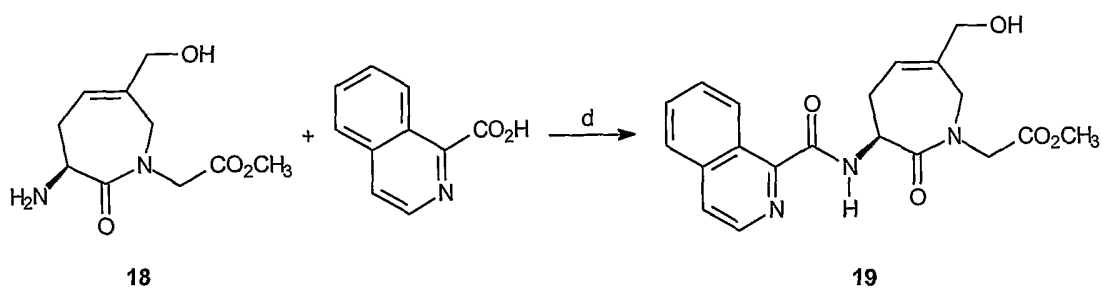
Reagents and conditions: (a) HOBt, EDCI, CH_2Cl_2 ; rt, 2 hr.



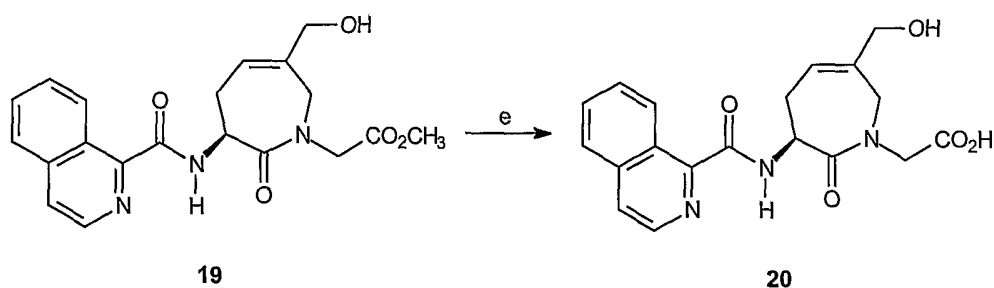
Reagents and conditions: (b) Grubbs' catalyst, CH_2Cl_2 ; 40 °C, 24 hr.



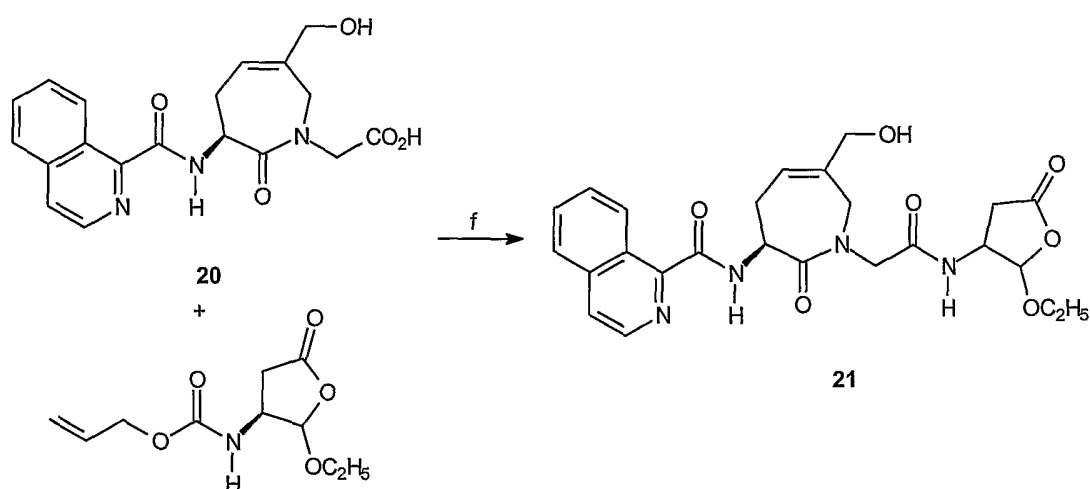
Reagents and conditions: (c) TFA, CH_2Cl_2 ; rt, 30 min.



Reagents and conditions: (d) HOBt, EDCI, CH_2Cl_2 ; rt, 3 hr.



Reagents and conditions: (e) LiOH, THF, H₂O; rt, 2.5 hr.



Reagents and conditions: (f) N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid, (Ph₃P)₄Pd, CH₂Cl₂, EDCI, HOBt; rt, 5 hr.

EXAMPLE 3

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-hydroxymethyl-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (21)

Preparation of {(2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-pent-4-enoyl)-[2-(*tert*-butyl-dimethyl-silanyloxymethyl)-allyl]-amino}-acetic acid methyl ester (16): A solution of [2-(*tert*-butyl-dimethyl-silaneloxymethyl)-allylamino]-acetic acid methyl ester, 15, (6 g, 21.9 mmol), N-Boc allylglycine (7.2 g, 32.9 mmol), HOBt (6 g, 43.9 mmol) and EDCI (8.5 g, 43.9 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (50 mL) is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction is diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO₃, saturated NaCl, and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified over silica (EtOAc/hexane) to afford 5.9 g (57% yield) of the desired product. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.77-5.61 (m, 1H), 5.15-4.85 (series of m, 4H), 4.64-3.76 (series of m, 7H), 3.63 (s, 3H),

2.47-2.42 (m, 1H), 2.34-2.23 (m, 1H), 1.34 (s, 9H), 0.82 (s, 9H), 0.04-0.02 (m, 6H); ^{13}C (CDCl_3 , rotamers) δ 174.1, 174.0, 171.0, 170.7, 156.8, 156.5, 144.7, 134.7, 134.3, 120.8, 120.0, 114.2, 113.7, 80.9, 80.7, 65.6, 65.3, 53.8, 53.4, 51.9, 51.4, 51.2, 50.1, 49.5, 48.5, 39.0, 38.6, 29.7, 27.3, 19.7, -3.9; MS 471 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of [3-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-6-(*tert*-butyl-dimethyl-silanyloxymethyl)-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl]-acetic acid methyl ester (17): Super Grubbs catalyst (2 g) is added to a solution {(2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-pent-4-enoyl)-[2-(*tert*-butyl-dimethyl-silanyloxymethyl)-allyl]-amino}-acetic acid methyl ester, 16, (4.1 g, 8.7 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (100 mL). The solution is refluxed for 1 hour then DMSO (10 mL) is added and stirring is continued for another 12 hours at room temperature. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified over silica (EtOAc/hexane) to afford 3.7 g (96% yield) of the desired product. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 5.80-5.78 (d, $J=6.3$ Hz, 1H), 5.65 (bs, 1H), 5.03-4.96 (m, 1H), 4.56-4.48 (m, 2H), 3.98 (s, 2H), 3.98-3.92 (d, $J=17.4$ Hz, 1H), 3.73 (s, 3H), 3.44-3.38 (d, $J=17.7$, 1H), 2.74-2.67 (d, d, $J=18$, 3.3 Hz, 1H), 2.30-2.18 (m, 1H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 0.89 (s, 9H), 0.06 (s, 6H); ^{13}C (CDCl_3) δ 172.9, 169.6, 155.2, 135.6, 124.6, 79.7, 66.9, 60.5, 52.4, 50.0, 49.8, 47.6, 33.1, 28.5, 26.0, 18.4, 14.4, -5.0; MS 442 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of (6-hydroxymethyl-3-amino-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl)-acetic acid methyl ester (18): A solution of [3-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-6-(*tert*-butyl-dimethyl-silanyloxymethyl)-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl]-acetic acid methyl ester, 17, (4.32 g, 9.7 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (20 mL) is treated with wet TFA (5 mL) and stirred at rt for 30 min. The solution is concentrated *in vacuo* using toluene to azeotrope off the solvent. The crude product is used without further purification.

Preparation of {6-hydroxymethyl-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester (19): The crude residue obtained from the procedure herein above is combined with 1-isoquinolinecarboxylic acid (2.6 g, 15.0 mmol), HOBt (2.68 g, 19.8 mmol), and EDCI (3.8 g, 19.8 mmol) in DMF (20 mL). The solution is stirred for 3 hours at room temperature then diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO_3 , saturated NaCl, and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue obtained purified by HPLC to afford 1.7 g (40% yield)

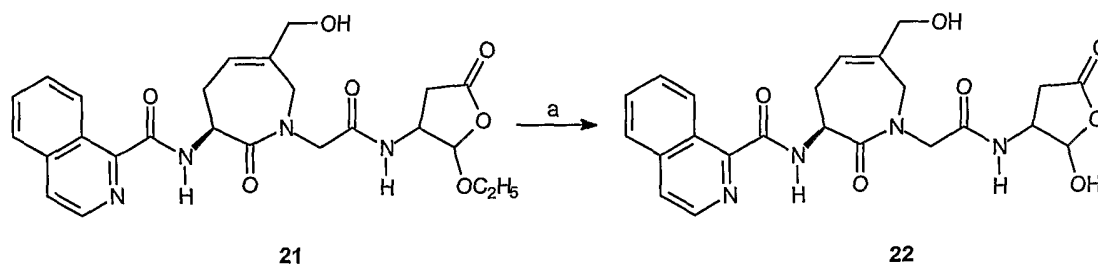
of the desired product. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 9.49-9.46 (d, $J=7.8$ Hz, 1H), 9.20-9.18 (d, $J=6.9$ Hz, 1H), 8.52-8.50 (d, $J=5.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.86-7.78 (m, 2H), 7.72-7.63 (m, 2H), 5.79 (bs, 1H), 5.55-5.47 (m, 1H), 4.76-4.69 (d, d, $J=17.3, 2.3$ Hz, 1H), 4.45-4.40 (d, $J=17.4$ Hz, 1H), 4.25-4.19 (d, $J=17.4$ Hz, 1H), 4.15-3.98 (m, 3H), 3.73 (s, 3H), 3.65-3.59 (d, $J=17.4$ Hz, 1H), 2.97-2.90 (d, d, $J=18.2, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 2.48-2.29 (m, 3H); ^{13}C (CDCl_3) δ 172.7, 170.5, 165.9, 148.2, 141.0, 137.7, 136.3, 130.7, 128.9, 127.7, 127.2, 126.4, 124.7, 67.5, 60.8, 52.8, 50.3, 49.3, 48.1, 32.5, 21.4, 14.5; MS 384 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of {6-(hydroxymethyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid (20): A solution of {6-hydroxymethyl-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester, **19**, (0.16g, 0.41 mmol) in THF/ H_2O (4 mL, 3:1) is treated with excess LiOH and stirred for 2.5 hours at room temperature. The solution is acidified to pH 7, concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by HPLC to afford 0.15 g of the desired product.

Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(hydroxymethyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbonyl]-methyl}-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (21): A catalytic amount of $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ is added to a solution of (2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-furan-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester (0.24 g, 1.0 mmol) and N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid (0.38 g, 2.4 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (5 mL). The solution is stirred for 15 minutes at room temperature after which {6-(*tert*-butyl-dimethyl-silyloxymethyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid, **22**, (0.15 g) is added as a solution in CH_2Cl_2 /DMF (2 mL, 1:1), followed by HOBt (0.126 g, 0.93 mmol) and EDCI (0.18 g, 0.93 mmol). The solution is stirred for 5 hours, diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO_3 and brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue is purified over silica (EtOAc/hexane) to afford the desired compound.

The compounds of this category wherein R^1 comprises the cysteine trap 2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl can be prepared by the procedure outlined in Scheme VII as indicated in the following example starting with compound **21**.

Scheme VII



Reagents and conditions: (a) TFA. CH₃CN, H₂O; rt.

EXAMPLE 4

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-hydroxymethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (22)

Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-hydroxymethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (22): Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-hydroxymethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide, **21**, prepared herein above is treatment with TFA in CH₃CN/H₂O to afford the desired compound which is purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC to afford 35 mg (18% yield) of the desired product. ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 9.23-9.20 (d, *J*=8.4Hz, 1H), 8.56-8.54 (d, *J*=5.7 Hz, 1H), 8.03-7.99 (m, 2H), 7.87-7.81 (d, d, *J*=6.9, 5.1 Hz, 1H), 7.77-7.73, (d, d, *J*=7.5, 7.2 Hz, 1H), 5.84 (bs, 1H), 5.61-5.52 (d, d, *J*=12.6, 4.2 Hz, 1H), 4.83-4.77 (d, *J*=16.5 Hz, 1H), 4.65-4.77 (d, d, *J*=3.6, 3.3 Hz, 1H), 4.43-4.32 (m, 2H), 4.18-4.04 (m, 3H), 3.69-3.51 (m, 1H), 3.40-3.30 (m, 1H), 2.92-2.44 (m, 6H); MS 469 (M+H)⁺.

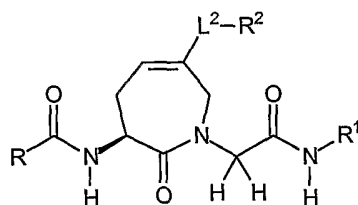
Other non-limiting examples of compounds which comprise this aspect of Category III include:

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {6-benzylsulfanylmethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide : ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.01-7.91 (m, 4H), 7.63-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.35-7.22 (m, 5H), 5.56-5.48 (m, 2H), 4.75-4.69 (d, *J*=17.1 Hz, 1H), 4.66-4.63 (d, d, *J*=3.6, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.41-4.34 (m, 2H), 4.16-4.10 (d, d, *J*=16.5, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 3.68-3.67 (d, *J*=2.7 Hz, 1H), 3.58-3.51 (d, d, *J*=17.4, 4.8 Hz, 1H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 3.18 (d, *J*=14.1 Hz, 1H), 3.04-2.99 (d, *J*=13.5 Hz, 1H), 2.76-2.66 (m, 2H), 2.58-2.49 (m, 2H); MS 574 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-6-phenylsulfanylmethyl-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.45 (s, 1H), 8.01-7.90 (m, 4H), 7.63-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.44-7.23 (m, 5H), 5.52-5.47 (m, 2H), 4.68-4.79 (m, 1H), 4.66-4.63 (d, d, $J=4.2$, 4.2 Hz, 1H), 4.47-4.33 (m, 2H), 4.16-4.10 (d, d, $J=16.2$, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 3.72-3.65 (m, 2H), 3.52-3.48 (d, $J=13.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.39-3.38 (m, 1H), 2.77-2.64 (m, 2H), 2.58-2.49 (m, 2H), 2.43-2.33 (d, d, $J=16.8$, 13.8 Hz, 1H); MS 560 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {6-hydroxymethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.47 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.85 (m, 4H), 7.64-7.50 (m, 2H), 5.81 (bs, 1H), 5.56 (dd, $J=12.9$, 3.9 Hz, 1H), 4.78 (d, $J=18.3$ Hz, 1H), 4.64 (dd, $J=4.2$, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.38-4.31 (M, 3H), 4.15 (dd, $J=15.9$, 3.3 Hz, 1H), 3.66-3.55 (m, 2H), 2.79-2.65 (m, 2H), 2.59-2.48 (m, 2H); MS 468 (M+H).

The second aspect of Category III comprises scaffolds having the formula:



wherein R, R¹, L and R² are described herein below in Table IV.

TABLE IV

No.	R	R ¹	L ²	R ²
241	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	phenyl
242	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	phenyl
243	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	phenyl
244	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-isopropylphenyl
245	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-isopropylphenyl
246	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-isopropylphenyl
247	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-pentylphenyl

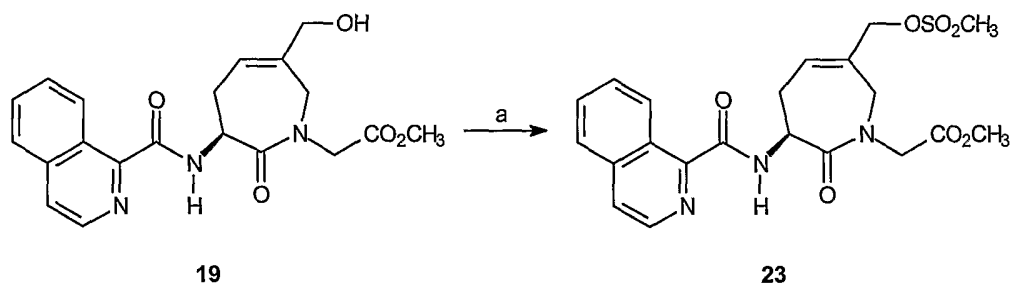
248	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-pentylphenyl
249	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-pentylphenyl
250	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	2-fluorophenyl
251	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	2-fluorophenyl
252	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	2-fluorophenyl
253	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	3-fluorophenyl
254	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	3-fluorophenyl
255	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	3-fluorophenyl
256	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-fluorophenyl
257	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-fluorophenyl
258	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-fluorophenyl
259	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	2-methylphenyl
260	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	2-methylphenyl
261	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	2-methylphenyl
262	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	3-methylphenyl
263	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	3-methylphenyl
264	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	3-methylphenyl
265	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-methylphenyl
266	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-methylphenyl
267	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-methylphenyl
268	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	2-methoxyphenyl
269	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	2-methoxyphenyl
270	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	2-methoxyphenyl
271	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	3-methoxyphenyl
272	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	3-methoxyphenyl
273	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	3-methoxyphenyl
274	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-methoxyphenyl
275	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-methoxyphenyl
276	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NH-	4-methoxyphenyl
277	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	phenyl
278	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	phenyl

279	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	phenyl
280	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-isopropylphenyl
281	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-isopropylphenyl
282	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-isopropylphenyl
283	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-pentylphenyl
284	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-pentylphenyl
285	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-pentylphenyl
286	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	2-fluorophenyl
287	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	2-fluorophenyl
288	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	2-fluorophenyl
289	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	3-fluorophenyl
290	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	3-fluorophenyl
291	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	3-fluorophenyl
292	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-fluorophenyl
293	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-fluorophenyl
294	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-fluorophenyl
295	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	2-methylphenyl
296	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	2-methylphenyl

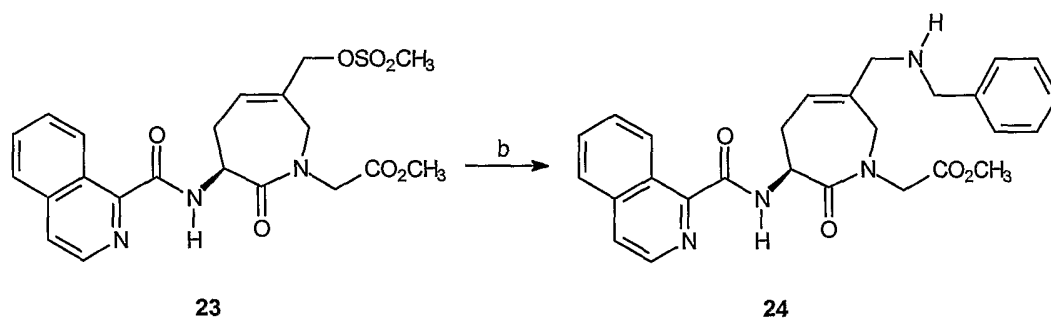
297	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	2-methylphenyl
298	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	3-methylphenyl
299	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	3-methylphenyl
300	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	3-methylphenyl
301	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-methylphenyl
302	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-methylphenyl
303	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-methylphenyl
304	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	2-methoxyphenyl
305	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	2-methoxyphenyl
306	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	2-methoxyphenyl
307	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	3-methoxyphenyl
308	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	3-methoxyphenyl
309	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	3-methoxyphenyl
310	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-methoxyphenyl
311	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-methoxyphenyl
312	1-isoquinolinyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	- CH ₂ NHCH ₂ -	4-methoxyphenyl

The compounds of the second aspect of Category III can be suitably prepared by the procedure outlined herein below, utilizing intermediates such as **19** as a starting point which can be synthesized by the procedure described in Scheme VIII.

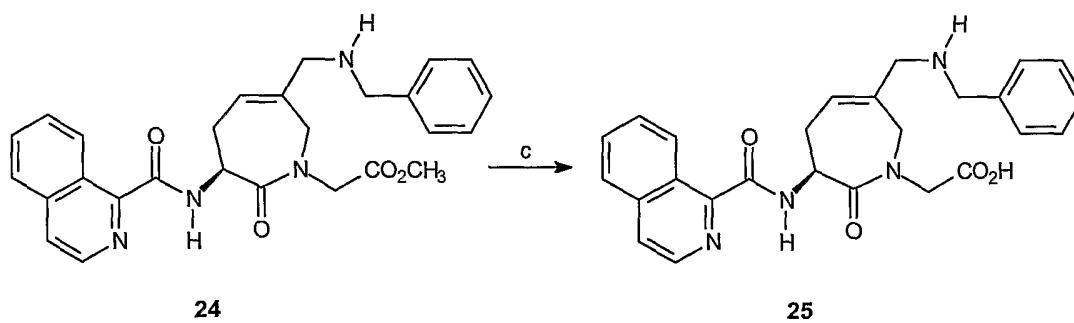
Scheme VIII



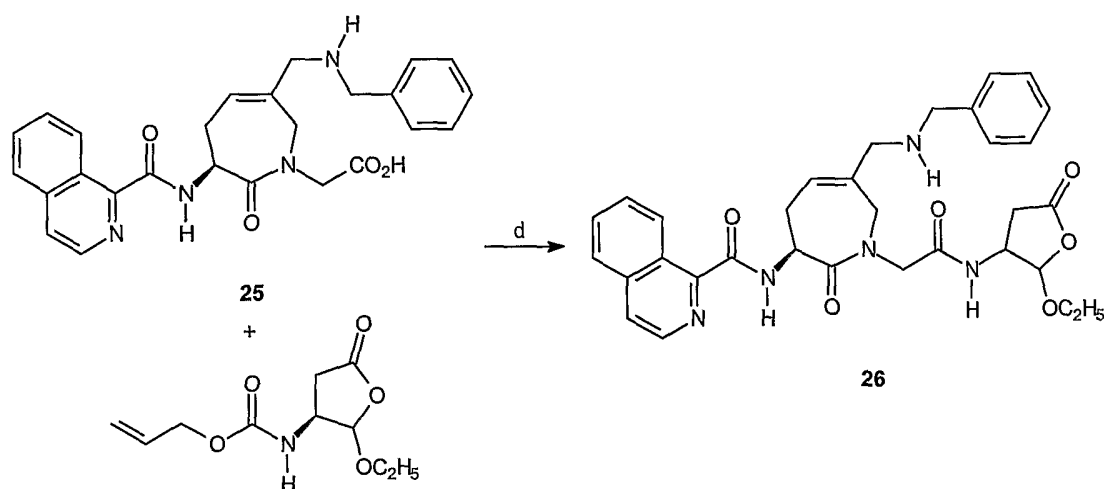
Reagents and conditions: (a) $\text{CH}_3\text{SO}_2\text{Cl}$, Et_3N , CH_2Cl_2 ; -78°C , 2 hr.



Reagents and conditions: (b) benzylamine, CH_2Cl_2 ; rt, 10 min.



Reagents and conditions: (c) LiOH , THF , H_2O ; rt, 2.5 hr.



Reagents and conditions: (d) N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid, $(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4\text{Pd}$, CH_2Cl_2 , EDCI, HOBt; rt, 5 hr.

EXAMPLE 5

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (26)

Preparation of {6-[(methanesulfonyl)methyl]-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester (23): A solution of {6-hydroxymethyl-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester, **19**, (1.35g, 3.52 mmol) in 10 mL CH_2Cl_2 is treated with triethyl amine (1.3 mL, 8.81 mmol) and methanesulfonyl chloride (0.61 mL, 7.93 mmol) at -78°C . After stirring at -78°C for 2 hours, the reaction mixture is poured into a CH_2Cl_2 /saturated NaCl solution. The organic layer is collected and washed with saturated NaHCO_3 , saturated NaCl, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the desired product which is used without further purification.

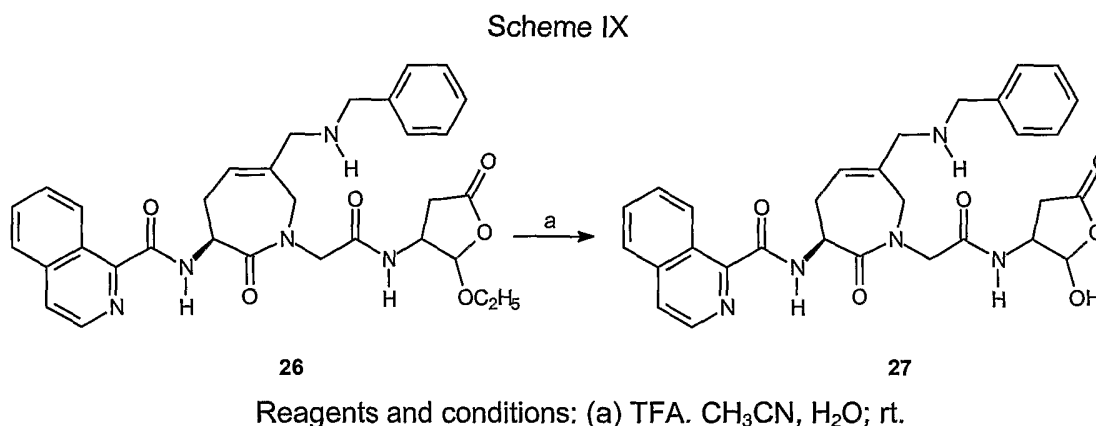
Preparation of {6-(benzylamino-methyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester (24): To the crude product from the previous reaction, {6-[(methanesulfonyl)methyl]-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester, **23**, (0.147g, 0.32 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (1 mL), is added benzylamine (1 mL). The reaction is stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes, then the reaction is diluted with CH_2Cl_2 . The organic layer is

washed with saturated NaHCO_3 , saturated NaCl , and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the resulting crude material is purified by HPLC to afford 82 mg (44% yield) of the desired product as the trifluoroacetate salt. ^1H (CDCl_3) δ 8.82-8.79 (d, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 8.61-8.59 (d, $J=8.6$ Hz, 1H), 8.33-8.31, (d, $J=5.8$ Hz, 1H), 8.01-7.99 (d, $J=5.94$ Hz, 1H), 7.95-7.82 (m, 2H), 7.77-7.72 (d, d, $J=7.98$, 7.98 Hz, 1H), 7.36-7.18 (m, 5H), 5.91 (bs, 1H), 5.40-5.39 (m, 1H), 4.67-4.61 (d, $J=17.4$ Hz, 1H), 4.55-4.49 (d, $J=17.8$ Hz, 1H), 4.19-4.05 (m, 1H), 3.88-3.83 (d, $J=14.7$ Hz, 1H), 3.77-3.57 (m, 3H), 3.50 (s, 3H), 2.84-2.78 (d, $J=17.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.50-2.40 (d, d, $J=15.8$, 14.5 Hz, 1H); ^{13}C (CDCl_3) 171.9, 171.5, 161.9, 161.4, 160.9, 160.6, 149.1, 139.1, 135.2, 134.7, 134.2, 131.3, 130.3, 130.2, 130.1, 129.6, 128.2, 127.9, 127.8, 127.4, 125.8, 121.5, 117.7, 113.8, 110.0, 53.5, 52.9, 51.6, 49.8, 48.3, 37.9, 31.6; MS 473 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzylaminomethyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl]-acetic acid (25): A solution containing {6-(benzylamino-methyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester, **24**, (82mg, 0.14 mmol) in THF/ H_2O (4 mL of 3:1) is treated with excess LiOH and stirred for 2.5 hours at room temperature. The solution is acidified to pH 7 and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue is purified by HPLC to afford the desired product which is used directly for the next step.

Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbonyl]-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (26): A catalytic amount of $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ is added to a solution of (2-ethoxy-5-oxo-furan-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester (100 mg, 0.43 mmol) and N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid (163 mg, 1.04 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (5 mL). The solution is stirred at room temperature for 15 minutes and then isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzylaminomethyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl]-acetic acid, **25**, is added as a solution $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{DMF}$ (2 mL of 1:1), followed by HOBt (54 mg, 0.40 mmol) and EDCI (77 mg, 0.40 mmol). The solution is stirred for 5 hours, diluted with EtOAc , washed with saturated NaHCO_3 and brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a residue which is purified over silica (EtOAc /hexane) to afford the desired product.

The compounds of this category wherein R¹ comprises the cysteine trap 2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl can be prepared by the procedure outlined in Scheme IX as indicated in the following example starting with compound **26**.



EXAMPLE 6

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (27)

Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (27): Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide, **26**, prepared herein above, is treated with TFA in CH₃CN/H₂O. The solution is then concentrated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue is purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC to afford 30 mg (38% yield) of the desired product. ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 9.20-9.17 (d, *J*=8.7 Hz, 1H), 8.57-8.56 (d, *J*=5.7 Hz, 1H), 8.06-8.02 (m, 2H), 7.88-7.83 (d, d, d, *J*=8.1, 6.6, 0.9 Hz, 1H), 7.79-7.73 (d, d, d, *J*=6.9, 6.9, 0.9 Hz, 1H), 7.64-7.60 (m, 2H), 7.55-7.47 (m, 3H), 6.14 (bs, 1H), 5.56-5.50 (d, d, *J*=12.3, 3.9 Hz, 1H), 4.85-4.79 (d, d, *J*=16.2, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 4.66-4.62 (d, d, *J*=9.0, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.39-4.25 (m, 4H), 3.89-3.68 (m, 4H), 2.99-2.93 (m, 1H), 2.74-2.45 (m, 4H), MS 557 (M+H)⁺.

Other non-limiting examples of compounds which comprise this aspect of Category III include:

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-6-piperidin-1-ylmethyl-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 9.19-9.16 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz, 1H), 8.57-8.55 (d, $J=5.4$ Hz, 1H), 8.04-8.01 (m, 2H), 7.82 (d, d, $J=7.2$, 6.9 Hz, 2H), 7.78-7.73 (d, d, $J=7.5$, 7.2 Hz, 2H), 6.16 (bs, 1H), 5.54-5.50 (d, d, $J=12.9$, 3.9 Hz, 1H), 4.88-4.82 (d, $J=16.2$ Hz, 1H), 3.91-3.57 (m, 8H), 3.02-2.81 (m, 6H), 2.73-2.55 (m, 2H), 2.04-1.54 (m, 7H).

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-6-phenylaminomethyl-2, 3, 4, 6-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 9.19-9.17 (d, $J=8.4$ Hz, 1H), 8.57-8.55 (d, $J=5.7$ Hz, 1H), 8.05-8.02 (m, 2H), 7.88-7.82 (d, d, d, $J=8.1$, 6.9, 1.2 Hz, 2H), 7.79-7.74 (d, d, d, $J=8.4$, 6.9, 1.5 Hz, 2H), 7.54-7.48 (m, 2H), 7.42-7.33 (m, 3H), 6.00 (bs, 1H), 5.57-5.51 (d, d, $J=12.9$, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 4.88-4.85 (m, 1H), 4.66-4.58 (m, 2H), 4.55-4.47 (d, d, $J=16.2$, 6.6 Hz, 1H), 4.42-4.34 (m, 1H), 4.03-3.97 (m, 3H), 3.71-3.66 (m, 1H), 2.94-2.89 (bd, $J=17.7$ Hz, 1H), 2.77-2.65 (m, 1H), 2.60-2.45 (m, 2H); MS 543.9 (M+H)

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-allylaminomethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 9.19-9.16 (d, $J=8.7$ Hz, 1H), 8.57-8.55 (d, $J=6.0$ Hz, 1H), 8.05-8.03 (m, 2H), 7.88-7.83 (d, d, $J=7.8$, 7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.79-7.74 (d, d, $J=7.8$, 7.5 Hz, 1H), 6.11-5.97 (m, 2H), 5.65-5.51 (m, 3H), 4.91-4.85 (m, 1H), 4.79-4.73 (d, d, $J=15.9$, 2.1 Hz, 1H), 4.67-4.62 (d, d, $J=10.5$, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.42-4.33 (m, 1H), 3.93-3.68 (m, 6H), 3.02-2.89 (m, 2H), 2.76-2.66 (m, 2H), 2.62-2.46 (m, 2H); MS 507.9 (M+H) $^+$.

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-morpholin-4-ylmethyl-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 9.18-9.15 (d, $J=8.4$ Hz, 1H), 8.57-8.55 (d, $J=6.0$ Hz, 1H), 8.05-8.02 (m, 2H), 7.87-7.82 (d, d, d, $J=9.6$, 6.9, 1.2 Hz, 1H), 7.78-7.73 (d, d, d, $J=8.4$, 6.9, 1.5 Hz, 2H), 6.18 (bs, 1H), 5.54-5.49 (d, d, $J=12.6$, 3.9 Hz, 1H), 4.65-4.60 (d, d, $J=11.4$, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.43-4.37 (m, 1H), 4.09-3.70 (m, 10 H), 3.56-3.52 (m, 1H), 3.00-2.44 (m, 7H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {6-(benzylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.48 (s, 1H), 8.03-7.93 (m, 4H), 7.66-7.57 (m, 4H), 7.51-7.47 (m, 3H), 6.12 (bs, 1H), 5.51 (dd, $J=12.6$, 4.2 Hz, 1H), 4.82 (dd, $J=16.5$, 2.7 Hz, 1H), 4.64 (dd, $J=9.6$, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.37-4.23 (m, 3H), 3.86-3.69 (m, 4H), 2.87-2.79 (m, 1H), 2.74-2.64 (m, 2H), 2.50 (ddd, $J=16.2$, 7.8, 3.3 Hz, 1H); MS 557 (M+H)

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl]-6-[(3-methoxy-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (1q): ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.47 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.92 (m, 4H), 7.65-7.56 (m, 2H), 7.44-7.38 (d, d, $J=8.4$, 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.17-7.15 (m, 2H), 7.04-7.01 (d, d, $J=8.4$, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 6.10 (bs, 1H), 5.52-5.46 (d, d, $J=12.9$, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 4.92-4.85 (m, 2H), 4.81-4.75 (d, d, $J=16.2$, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 4.65-4.61 (d, d, $J=8.4$, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.40-4.20 (m, 3H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.83-3.81 (m, 1H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 2.85-2.78 (m, 1H), 2.75-2.56 (m, 2H), 2.54-2.44 (d, d, d, $J=16.2$, 8.1, 3.9 Hz, 1H); MS 588 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl]-6-[(2-methoxy-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.48 (s, 1H), 8.03-7.93 (m, 4H), 7.66-7.57 (m, 2H), 7.52-7.46 (m, 2H), 7.16-7.13 (d, $J=9.3$ Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.05 (d, d, d, $J=8.4$, 7.2, 0.6 Hz, 1H), 6.11 (bs, 1H), 5.54-5.48 (d, d, $J=12.6$, 3.9 Hz, 1H), 4.88-4.85 (m, 1H), 4.77-4.70 (d, d, $J=16.2$, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.63-4.59 (d, d, $J=7.5$, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.34-4.29 (m, 3H), 3.99 (s, 3H), 3.89-3.84 (d, $J=15.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.75-3.67 (d, d, $J=17.4$, 6.3 Hz, 1H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 2.87-2.79 (d, d, $J=17.7$, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 2.73-2.59 (m, 2H), 2.53-2.44 (d, d, d, $J=16.5$, 8.1, 3.3 Hz, 1H); MS 588 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl]-6-[(4-methoxy-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.00-7.91 (m, 4H), 7.63-7.49 (m, 4H), 7.03 (m, 2H), 6.09 (bs, 1H), 5.50-5.44 (d, d, $J=12.9$, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 4.88 (m, 1H), 4.822-4.76 (d, d, $J=16.2$, 2.1 Hz, 1H), 4.66-4.62 (d, d, $J=8.1$, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.41-4.36 (m, 1H), 4.33-

4.24 (d, $J=12.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.18-4.14 (d, $J=12.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.83 (s, 3H), 3.80-3.74 (m, 2H), 3.69 (s, 2H), 2.83-2.57 (m, 3H), 2.54-2.45 (d, d, d, $J=16.2, 8.1, 3.0$ Hz, 1H); MS 588 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {6-[(4-*tert*-butyl-benzylamino)-methyl]-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.45 (s, 1H), 8.03-7.93 (m, 4H), 7.63-7.51 (m, 6H), 6.12 (bs, 1H), 5.53-5.47 (d, d, $J=12.9, 4.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.85-4.80 (d, $J=16.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.86-4.62 (d, d, $J=12.3, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.39-4.20 (m, 3H), 3.86-3.77 (m, 2H), 3.73 (s, 2H), 2.87-2.79 (d, d, $J=18.6, 3.3$ Hz, 1H), 2.74-2.65 (m, 2H), 2.54-2.45 (d, d, d, $J=15.9, 8.1, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 1.36 (s, 9H); MS 613 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(2-methyl-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.00-7.91 (m, 4H), 7.63-7.55 (m, 3H), 7.35-7.28 (m, 3H), 6.13 (bs, 1H), 5.51-5.46 (d, d, $J=12.9, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.91-4.85 (m, 1H), 4.83-4.76 (d, d, $J=16.2, 3.3$ Hz, 1H), 4.64-4.60 (d, d, $J=6.9, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.38-4.26 (m, 3H), 3.87-3.73 (m, 4H), 2.85-2.77 (d, d, $J=18.9, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 2.73-2.63 (m, 2H), 2.53-2.50 (d, d, $J=8.1, 3.0$ Hz, 1H), 2.46 (s, 3H); MS 571 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(3-methyl-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.00-7.91 (m, 4H), 7.63-7.54 (m, 2H), 7.40-7.34 (m, 3H), 7.28-7.25 (m, 1H), 6.09 (bs, 1H), 5.50-5.44 (d, d, $J=12.9, 4.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.91-4.82 (m, 1H), 4.80-4.74 (d, d, $J=16.5, 1.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.65-4.61 (d, d, $J=7.8, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.42-4.33 (m, 1H), 4.30-4.26 (d, $J=12.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.21-4.17 (d, $J=12.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.88-3.82 (d, d, $J=16.2, 2.7$ Hz, 1H), 3.78-3.75 (d, $J=9.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.71 (s, 2H), 2.83-2.76 (d, d, $J=18.9, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 2.77-2.63 (m, 2H), 2.565-2.45 (d, d, d, $J=16.2, 8.1, 3.3$ Hz, 1H), 2.40 (s, 3H); MS 571 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(4-methyl-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.47 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.93 (m, 4H), 7.65-7.56 (m, 2H), 7.49-7.46 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz, 2H), 7.33-7.30 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz, 2H), 6.10 (bs, 1H), 5.52-5.46 (d, d,

$J=12.9, 4.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.88-4.87 (m, 1H), 4.85-4.77 (d, d, $J=16.5, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.66-4.62 (d, d, $J=9.3, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.39-4.33 (m, 1H), 4.31-4.27 (d, $J=12.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.22-4.18 (d, $J=12.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.87-3.70 (d, d, $J=16.2, 2.4$ Hz, 1H), 3.78-3.75 (d, $J=9.0$ Hz, 1H), 3.71 (s, 2H), 2.85-2.78 (d, d, $J=17.7, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.74-2.65 (m, 2H), 2.54-2.48 (d, d, d, $J=16.5, 8.1, 3.6$ Hz, 1H); 2.39 (s, 3H); MS 571 (M+H).

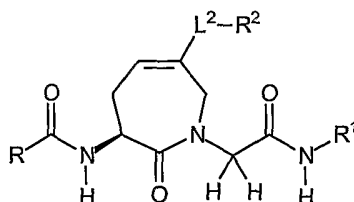
Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(4-methanesulfonyl-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide : ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.48 (s, 1H), 8.11-8.08 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz, 2H), 8.03-7.87 (m, 6H), 7.65-7.57 (m, 2H), 6.17 (bs, 1H), 5.54-5.48 (d, d, $J=12.9, 4.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.96-4.93 (m, 1H), 4.63-4.58 (d, d, $J=12.3, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.51-4.47 (d, $J=13.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.39-4.35 (d, $J=13.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.33-4.28 (m, 1H), 3.87-3.76 (m, 5H), 3.18 (s, 3H), 2.88-2.81 (d, d, $J=16.8, 2.4$ Hz, 1H), 2.72-2.60 (m, 2H), 2.51-2.41 (d, d, d, $J=16.2, 7.8, 4.5$ Hz, 1H); MS 634.34 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-6-[(4-[1, 2, 3]thiadiazol-4-yl-benzylamino)-methyl]-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide : ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 9.36 (s, 1H), 8.49 (s, 1H), 8.28-8.26 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz, 2H), 8.04-7.98 (m, 4H), 7.81-7.79 (d, $J=7.5$ Hz, 2H), 7.66-7.62 (m, 2H), 6.18 (bs, 1H), 5.56-5.50 (d, d, $J=4.8, 15.3$ Hz, 1H), 4.97-4.92 (m, 1H), 4.66-4.61 (d, d, $J=3.3, 1.7$ Hz, 1H), 4.47-4.32 (m, 3H), 3.83-3.79 (m, 5H), 2.88-2.83 (d, $J=15.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.72-2.67 (m, 2H), 2.52-2.43 (d, d, d, $J=20.1, 7.5, 3.9$ Hz, 1H); MS 640.77 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(4-isopropyl-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.49 (s, 1H), 8.04-8.93 (m, 4H), 7.64-7.60 (m, 2H), 7.54-7.52 (d, $J=7.2$ Hz, 2H), 7.41-7.38 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz, 2H), 6.12 (bs, 1H), 5.54-5.48 (d, d, $J=12.6, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.96-4.94 (m, 1H), 4.82-4.81 (d, $J=1.8$ Hz, 1H), 4.68-4.62 (d, d, $J=12.3, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.40-4.33 (m, 1H), 4.29-4.20 (m, 2H), 3.84-3.78 (m, 2H), 3.73 (s, 2H), 3.03-2.93 (septet, $J=6.9$ Hz, 1H), 2.86-2.80 (d, d, $J=17.7, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.74-2.64 (m, 2H), 2.54-2.45 (d, d, d, $J=4.5, 7.8, 16.2$ Hz, 1H), 1.30-1.28 (d, $J=6.9$ Hz, 6H); MS 597.80 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-6-[(4-pentyl-benzylamino)-methyl]-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.48 (s, 1H), 8.03-7.93 (m, 4H), 7.66-7.59 (m, 2H), 7.52-7.49 (d, $J=7.2$ Hz, 2H), 7.34-7.32 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz, 1H), 6.11 (bs, 1H), 5.53-5.47 (d, d, $J=12.6, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.85-4.79 (d, d, $J=16.2, 2.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.67-4.62 (d, d, $J=10.5, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.42-4.34 (m, 1H), 4.32-4.28 (d, $J=12.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.24-4.19 (d, $J=12.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.86-3.79 (d, d, $J=16.5, 3.0$ Hz, 1H), 3.76-3.67 (m, 3H), 3.41-3.38 (m, 1H), 2.88-2.79 (d, d, $J=18.3, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.74-2.65 (m, 4H), 2.54-2.45 (d, d, d, $J=16.2, 8.1, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 1.71-1.61 (m, 2H), 1.42-1.32 (m, 4H), 0.95-0.90 (t, $J=6.9$ Hz, 3H); MS 627 (M+H).

The third aspect of Category III comprises scaffolds having the formula:



wherein R, R^1 , L^2 and R^2 are described herein below in Table V.

TABLE V

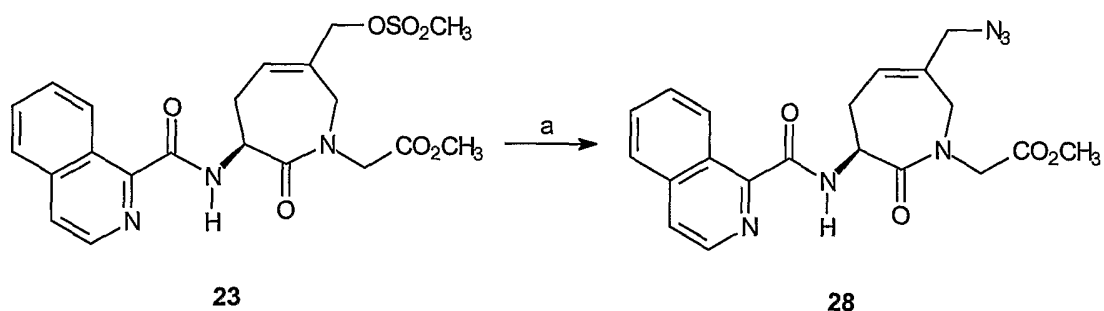
No.	R	R^1	$-\text{L}^2-\text{R}^2$
313	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCOC}_6\text{H}_5$
314	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCOC}_6\text{H}_5$
315	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCOC}_6\text{H}_5$
316	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}[4-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4]$
317	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}[4-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4]$
318	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}[4-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4]$
319	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4-n\text{-pentylC}_6\text{H}_4)$
320	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4-n\text{-pentylC}_6\text{H}_4)$
321	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4-n\text{-pentylC}_6\text{H}_4)$
322	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(2\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$
323	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(2\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$
324	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(2\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$

325	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-FC ₆ H ₄)
326	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-FC ₆ H ₄)
327	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-FC ₆ H ₄)
328	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-FC ₆ H ₄)
329	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-FC ₆ H ₄)
330	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-FC ₆ H ₄)
331	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
332	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
333	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
334	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
335	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
336	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
337	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
338	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
339	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
340	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
341	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
342	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
343	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
344	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
345	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
346	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
347	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
348	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
349	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCOC ₆ H ₅
350	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCOC ₆ H ₅
351	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCOC ₆ H ₅
352	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO[4-CH(CH ₃) ₂ C ₆ H ₄]
353	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO[4-CH(CH ₃) ₂ C ₆ H ₄]
354	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO[4-CH(CH ₃) ₂ C ₆ H ₄]
355	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4- <i>n</i> -pentylC ₆ H ₄)
356	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4- <i>n</i> -pentylC ₆ H ₄)
357	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4- <i>n</i> -pentylC ₆ H ₄)

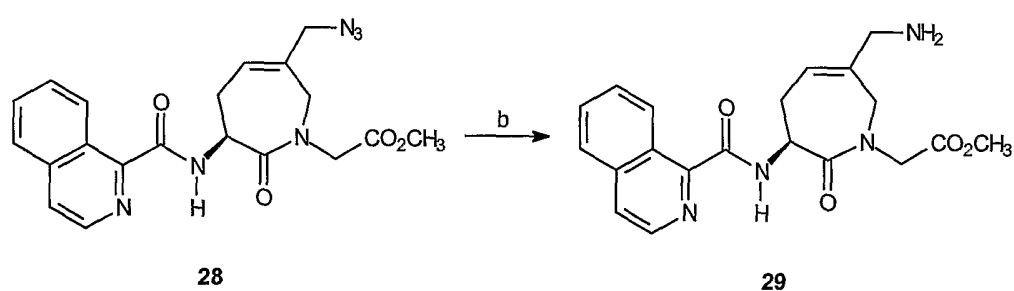
358	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-FC ₆ H ₄)
359	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-FC ₆ H ₄)
360	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-FC ₆ H ₄)
361	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-FC ₆ H ₄)
362	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-FC ₆ H ₄)
363	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-FC ₆ H ₄)
364	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-FC ₆ H ₄)
365	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-FC ₆ H ₄)
366	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-FC ₆ H ₄)
367	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
368	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
369	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
370	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
371	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
372	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
373	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
374	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
375	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
376	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
377	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
378	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
379	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
380	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
381	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
382	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
383	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
384	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)

The compounds of the third aspect of Category III can be suitably prepared by the procedure outlined herein below, utilizing intermediates such as **23** as a starting point which can be synthesized by the procedure described in Scheme VIII.

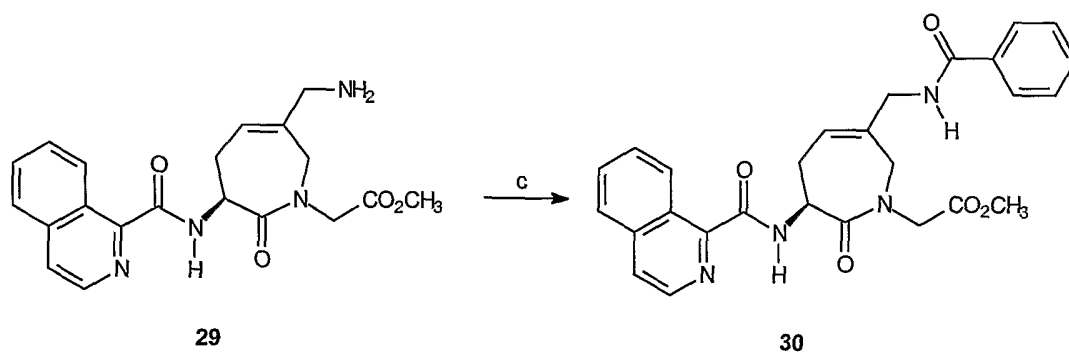
Scheme X



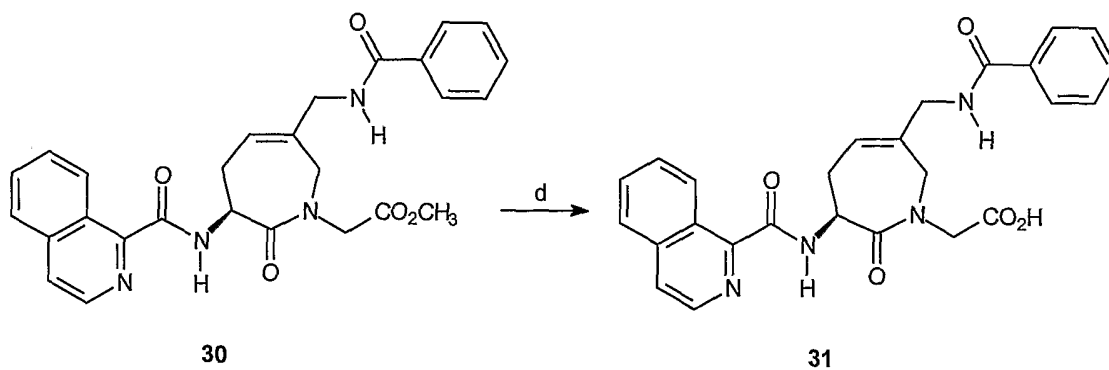
Reagents and conditions: a) NaN_3 , DMF; 50 °C, 18 hr.



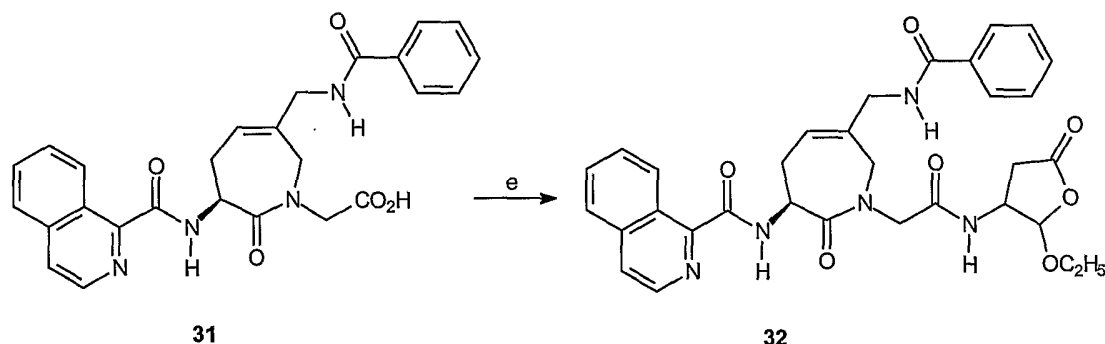
Reagents and conditions: b) Ph_3P , H_2O , THF; rt, 18 hr.



Reagents and conditions: c) PhCOCl , Et_3N , THF; rt.



Reagents and conditions: d) LiOH, THF/H₂O, rt, 2.5 hrs



Reagents and conditions: e) (2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester; N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid, (Ph₃P)₄Pd, CH₂Cl₂, EDCI, HOBt

EXAMPLE 7

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2, 3, 4, 7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (32)

Preparation of {6-azidomethyl-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic methyl ester (28): To a solution of {6-[(methanesulfonyl)methyl]-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester, **23**, (1.62 g, 3.52 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) is added sodium azide at room temperature. The reaction is then heated to 50°C and stirred 18 hours after which time the solution is diluted with water. The resulting solution is extracted three times with CH₂Cl₂ (70 mL), the organic layers combined and washed with saturated NaHCO₃, saturated NaCl, and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the resulting residue is purified by HPLC to afford 0.46 g (59% yield) of the desired product. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 9.49-9.46 (m, 1H), 9.21-9.19 (d, *J*=6.9 Hz, 1H), 8.48-8.46 (m, 1H), 7.81-7.74 (m, 2H), 7.69-7.60 (m, 2H), 5.83-5.81 (m, 1H), 5.51-5.43 (m, 1H), 4.76-4.69 (d, d, *J*=17.4, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 4.46-4.40 (d, *J*=17.4 Hz, 1H), 4.20-4.14 (d, *J*=17.7 Hz, 1H), 3.84-3.76 (d, *J*=13.2 Hz, 1H), 3.74-3.70 (m, 3H), 3.68-3.64 (d, *J*=13.2 Hz, 1H), 3.44-3.39 (d, *J*=17.7 Hz, 1H), 2.99-2.92 (d, d, *J*=18.3, 3.9 Hz, 1H), 2.50-2.40 (d, d, *J*=15.6, 14.7 Hz, 1H); MS 409 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of {6-(aminomethyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester (29): A solution of {6-azidomethyl-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester, **28**, (0.46g, 1.12 mmol) in THF (10 mL) and 5 drops of water is treated with triphenylphosphine (0.6 g, 2.25 mmol) at room temperature. The solution is stirred for 18 hours after which the solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the resulting residue is purified by HPLC to afford the desired product which is immediately used for the next step.

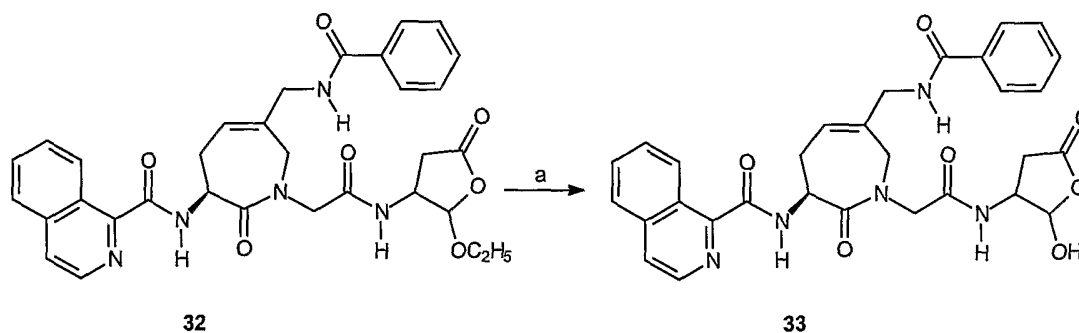
Preparation of {6-(benzoylamino-methyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester (30): To a solution of {6-(aminomethyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester, **29**, (0.14 g, 0.37 mmol) in THF (1 mL) is added benzoyl chloride (80 μ l, 0.75 mmol) and triethyl amine (0.71 mL, 4.99 mmol). The reaction is complete with a few minutes. Methanol (5 mL) is added to the reaction mixture and then the solvents are removed *in vacuo* to provide a residue which is purified by HPLC to afford 84 mg (46% yield) of the desired product. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 9.37-9.33 (d, $J=9.4$ Hz, 1H), 9.06-9.03 (d, $J=5.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.73-7.64 (m, 4H), 7.59-7.48 (m, 2H), 7.41-7.48 (m, 4H), 5.68 (bs, 1H), 5.37-5.30 (m, 1H), 4.64-4.57 (d, d, $J=17.5, 2.37$ Hz, 1H), 4.4-4.40 (d, $J=17.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.15-4.08 (d, d, $J=14.5, 6.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.82-3.76 (d, $J=17.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.76-3.70 (d, d, $J=14.7$ Hz, 1H), 3.42 (s, 3H), 3.38-3.33 (d, $J=17.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.81-2.76 (m, 1H), 2.35-2.25 (d, d, $J=16.3, 14.2$ Hz, 1H); ^{13}C (CDCl_3) 172.6, 170.5, 168.0, 165.9, 148.2, 141.0, 137.7, 134.3, 133.8, 132.4, 132.3, 132.0, 130.7, 129.0, 128.9, 127.7, 127.6, 127.5, 127.2, 124.7, 52.6, 50.5, 49.3, 49.1, 46.7, 32.6; MS 487 (M+H).

Preparation of {6-(benzoylamino-methyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid (31): A solution containing {6-(benzoylamino-methyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester, **30**, (84 mg, 0.17 mmol) in THF/ H_2O (4 mL of 3:1) is treated with excess LiOH and the solution stirred for 2.5 hours at room temperature. The solution is then acidified and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc layer was dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated to the crude product which is used without further purification.

Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzoylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7,-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (32): A catalytic amount of $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ is added to a solution of (2-ethoxy-5-oxo-furan-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester (100 mg, 0.43 mmol) and N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid (135 mg, 0.86 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (5 mL). The solution is stirred at room temperature for 15 minutes then {6-(benzoylamino-methyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid, **31**, prepared in the previous step, is dissolved in $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{DMF}$ (2 mL of 1:1) and added. HOBt (54 mg, 0.40 mmol) and EDCI (77 mg, 0.40 mmol) are added and the solution stirred for 5 hours after which time it is diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO_3 and brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue is purified over silica (EtOAc/hexane) to afford the desired product.

The compounds of this category wherein R^1 comprises the cysteine trap 2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl can be prepared by the procedure outlined in Scheme XI as indicated in the following example starting with compound **32**.

Scheme XI



Reagents and conditions: (a) TFA. CH_3CN , H_2O ; rt.

EXAMPLE 8

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzoylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7,-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (33)

Preparation of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzoylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7,-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (33): A solution of isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzoylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7,-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide, **32**, as prepared in the above example, in CH₃CN/H₂O is treated with excess trifluoroacetic acid. The solution is stirred several hours then purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC to afford 51 mg (51% yield) of the desired product. ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 9.15-9.12 (d, *J*=8.4 Hz, 1H), 8.56-8.54 (d, *J*=5.7 Hz, 1H), 8.08-8.04 (m, 2H), 7.92-7.76 (m, 4H), 7.57-7.50 (m, 3H), 5.83 (bs, 1H), 5.61-5.56 (d, d, *J*=12.6, 3.9 Hz, 1H), 4.90-4.85 (d, *J*=17.4 Hz, 1H), 4.63-4.60 (m, 1H), 4.41-4.01 (m, 3H), 3.65-3.58 (d, d, *J*=17.4, 2.7 Hz, 1H), 2.91-2.85 (bd, *J*=18.9 Hz, 1H), 2.75-2.65 (m, 1H), 2.55-2.46 (m, 2H); MS 572 (M+H).

Other non-limiting examples of compounds which comprise this aspect of Category III include:

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(3-methoxy-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 8.47 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.92 (m, 4H), 7.65-7.56 (m, 2H), 7.44-7.38 (d, d, *J*=8.4, 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.17-7.15 (m, 2H), 7.04-7.01 (d, d, *J*=8.4, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 6.10 (bs, 1H), 5.52-5.46 (d, d, *J*=12.9, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 4.92-4.85 (m, 2H), 4.81-4.75 (d, d, *J*=16.2, 1.8 Hz, 1H), 4.65-4.61 (d, d, *J*=8.4, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.40-4.20 (m, 3H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.83-3.81 (m, 1H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 2.85-2.78 (m, 1H), 2.75-2.56 (m, 2H), 2.54-2.44 (d, d, d, *J*=16.2, 8.1, 3.9 Hz, 1H); MS 588 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(2-methoxy-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 8.48 (s, 1H), 8.03-7.93 (m, 4H), 7.66-7.57 (m, 2H), 7.52-7.46 (m, 2H), 7.16-7.13 (d, *J*=9.3 Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.05 (d, d, d, *J*=8.4, 7.2, 0.6 Hz, 1H), 6.11 (bs, 1H), 5.54-5.48 (d, d, *J*=12.6, 3.9 Hz, 1H), 4.88-4.85 (m, 1H), 4.77-4.70 (d, d, *J*=16.2, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.63-4.59 (d, d, *J*=7.5, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.34-4.29 (m, 3H), 3.99 (s, 3H), 3.89-3.84 (d, *J*=15.9 Hz, 1H), 3.75-3.67 (d, d, *J*=17.4, 6.3 Hz, 1H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 2.87-2.79

(d, d, $J=17.7, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.73-2.59 (m, 2H), 2.53-2.44 (d, d, d, $J=16.5, 8.1, 3.3$ Hz, 1H); MS 588 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(3-methoxy-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.47 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.92 (m, 4H), 7.65-7.56 (m, 2H), 7.44-7.38 (d, d, $J=8.4, 8.1$ Hz, 1H), 7.17-7.15 (m, 2H), 7.04-7.01 (d, d, $J=8.4, 1.8$ Hz, 1H), 6.10 (bs, 1H), 5.52-5.46 (d, d, $J=12.9, 4.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.92-4.85 (m, 2H), 4.81-4.75 (d, d, $J=16.2, 1.8$ Hz, 1H), 4.65-4.61 (d, d, $J=8.4, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.40-4.20 (m, 3H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.83-3.81 (m, 1H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 2.85-2.78 (m, 1H), 2.75-2.56 (m, 2H), 2.54-2.44 (d, d, d, $J=16.2, 8.1, 3.9$ Hz, 1H); MS 588 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(2-methoxy-benzylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.48 (s, 1H), 8.03-7.93 (m, 4H), 7.66-7.57 (m, 2H), 7.52-7.46 (m, 2H), 7.16-7.13 (d, $J=9.3$ Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.05 (d, d, d, $J=8.4, 7.2, 0.6$ Hz, 1H), 6.11 (bs, 1H), 5.54-5.48 (d, d, $J=12.6, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.88-4.85 (m, 1H), 4.77-4.70 (d, d, $J=16.2, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.63-4.59 (d, d, $J=7.5, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.34-4.29 (m, 3H), 3.99 (s, 3H), 3.89-3.84 (d, $J=15.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.75-3.67 (d, d, $J=17.4, 6.3$ Hz, 1H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 2.87-2.79 (d, d, $J=17.7, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.73-2.59 (m, 2H), 2.53-2.44 (d, d, d, $J=16.5, 8.1, 3.3$ Hz, 1H); MS 588 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {6-[(2-fluoro-benzoylamino)-methyl]-1-[3-(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-2-oxo-propyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.91 (m, 4H), 7.80-7.75 (m, 1H), 7.64-7.52 (m, 3H), 7.34-7.21 (m, 2H), 5.83 (bs, 1H), 5.58-5.52 (d, d, $J=12.9, 4.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.88-4.83 (m, 1H), 4.64-4.61 (d, d, $J=7.2, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.37-4.24 (m, 3H), 4.05 (s, 2H), 3.63-3.56 (d, d, $J=18.0, 3.3$ Hz, 1H), 2.79-2.47 (m, 4H); MS 589 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {6-[(3-fluoro-benzoylamino)-methyl]-1-[3-(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-2-oxo-propyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.00-7.91 (m, 4H), 7.76-7.73 (m, 1H), 7.65-7.49 (m, 4H), 7.34-7.28 (m, 1H), 5.81 (bs, 1H), 5.56-5.51 (d, d, $J=12.3, 2.9$ Hz, 1H),

4.89-4.82 (m, 1H), 4.64-4.61 (m, 1H), 4.39-4.14 (m, 3H), 4.03 (s, 2H), 3.62-3.55 (d, d, $J=18.0, 3.3$ Hz, 1H), 2.78-2.65 (m, 2H), 2.61-2.47 (m, 2H); MS 589 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {6-[(4-fluoro-benzoylamino)-methyl]-1-[3-(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-2-oxo-propyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.45 (s, 1H), 8.00-7.91 (m, 4H), 7.63-7.54 (m, 2H), 7.26-7.20 (m, 2H), 5.82 (bs, 1H), 5.56-5.50 (d, d, $J=12.9, 4.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.88-4.81 (m, 1H), 4.63-4.61 (m, 1H), 4.39-4.12 (m, 3H), 4.02 (s, 2H), 3.63-3.56 (d, d, $J=17.7, 3.0$ Hz, 1H), 2.77-2.66 (m, 2H), 2.60-2.47 (m, 2H); MS 589 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-6-[(2-methoxy-benzoylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.47 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.88 (m, 5H), 7.64-7.50 (m, 3H), 7.19-7.16 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz), 7.11-7.06 (d, d, $J=8.4, 7.5$ Hz, 1H), 5.82 (bs, 1H), 5.60-5.54 (d, d, $J=12.9, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.86-4.83 (m, 1H), 4.64-4.60 (d, d, $J=7.8, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.35-4.13 (m, 3H), 4.08 (s, 2H), 4.01 (s, 3H), 3.63-3.56 (d, d, $J=18.0, 3.0$ Hz, 1H), 2.80-2.62 (m, 2H), 2.57 (m, 2H); MS 601 (M+H).

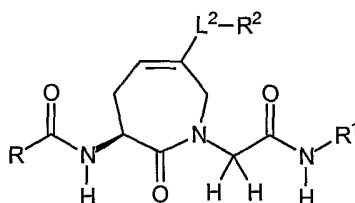
Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-6-[(3-methoxy-benzoylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.00-7.91 (m, 4H), 7.63-7.54 (m, 2H), 7.49-7.38 (m, 3H), 7.13-7.10 (m, 1H), 5.80 (s, 1H), 5.56-5.51 (d, d, $J=12.9, 4.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.88-4.80 (m, 1H), 4.63-4.60 (d, d, $J=4.8, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.40-4.22 (m, 3H), 4.08 (s, 2H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.62-3.55 (d, d, $J=17.7, 2.7$ Hz, 1H), 2.78-2.65 (m, 2H), 2.60-2.47 (m, 2H); MS 601 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-6-[(4-methoxy-benzoylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.45 (s, 1H), 7.99-7.85 (m, 6H), 7.62-7.54 (m, 2H), 7.04-6.99 (m, 2H), 5.80 (bs, 1H), 5.55-5.50 (d, d, $J=12.3, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.88-4.80 (m, 1H), 4.63-4.60 (d, d, $J=3.6, 3.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.42-4.13 (m, 3H), 4.00 (s, 2H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.61-3.55 (d, d, $J=17.1, 1.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.77-2.65 (m, 2H), 2.55-2.47 (m, 2H); MS 601 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {6-benzylsulfanylmethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.01-7.91 (m, 4H), 7.63-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.35-7.22 (m, 5H), 5.56-5.48 (m, 2H), 4.75-4.69 (d, $J=17.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.66-4.63 (d, d, $J=3.6$, 3.6 Hz, 1H), 4.41-4.34 (m, 2H), 4.16-4.10 (d, d, $J=16.5$, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 3.68-3.67 (d, $J=2.7$ Hz, 1H), 3.58-3.51 (d, d, $J=17.4$, 4.8 Hz, 1H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 3.18 (d, $J=14.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.04-2.99 (d, $J=13.5$ Hz, 1H), 2.76-2.66 (m, 2H), 2.58-2.49 (m, 2H); MS 574 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-6-phenylsulfanylmethyl-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.45 (s, 1H), 8.01-7.90 (m, 4H), 7.63-7.55 (m, 2H), 7.44-7.23 (m, 5H), 5.52-5.47 (m, 2H), 4.68-4.79 (m, 1H), 4.66-4.63 (d, d, $J=4.2$, 4.2 Hz, 1H), 4.47-4.33 (m, 2H), 4.16-4.10 (d, d, $J=16.2$, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 3.72-3.65 (m, 2H), 3.52-3.48 (d, $J=13.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.39-3.38 (m, 1H), 2.77-2.64 (m, 2H), 2.58-2.49 (m, 2H), 2.43-2.33 (d, d, $J=16.8$, 13.8 Hz, 1H); MS 560 (M+H).

The fourth aspect of Category III comprises scaffolds having the formula:



wherein R, R¹, L² and R² are described herein below in Table VI.

TABLE VI

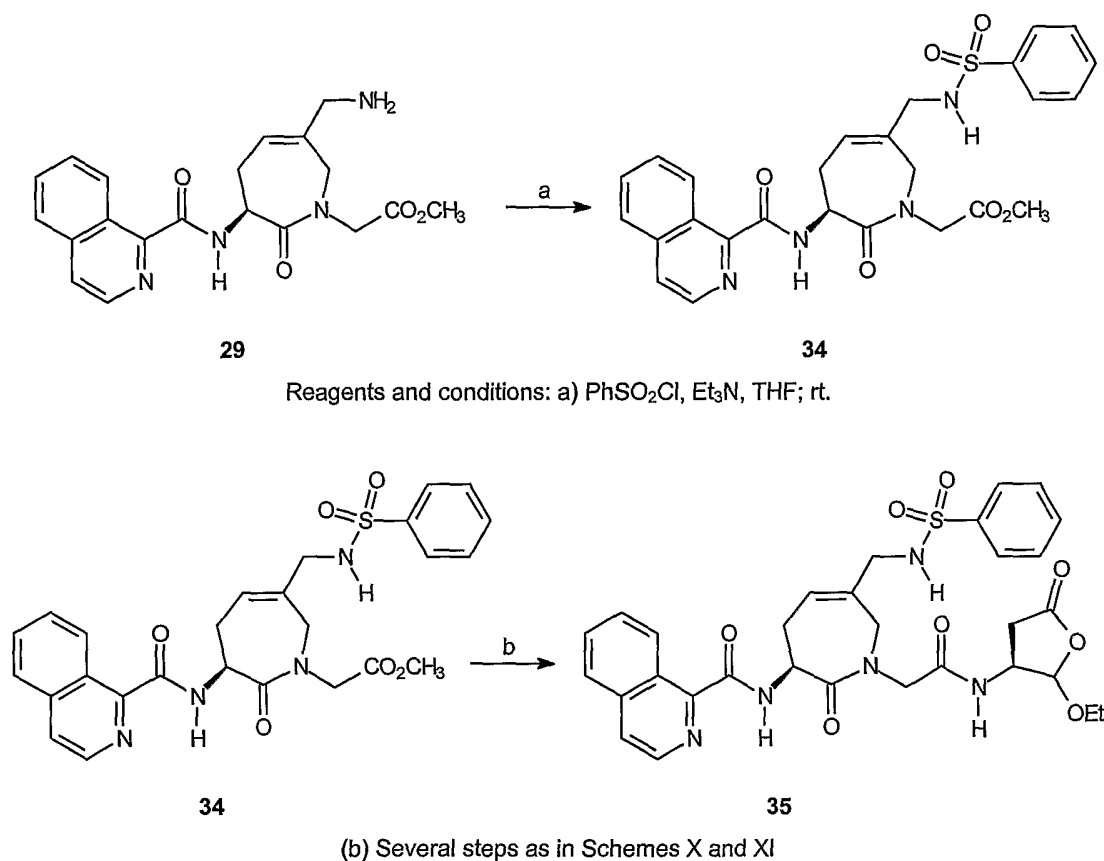
No.	R	R ¹	-L ² -R ²
313	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ C ₆ H ₅
314	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	CH ₂ NHSO ₂ C ₆ H ₅
315	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	CH ₂ NHSO ₂ C ₆ H ₅
319	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (4- <i>n</i> -pentylC ₆ H ₄)
320	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (4- <i>n</i> -pentylC ₆ H ₄)
321	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (4- <i>n</i> -pentylC ₆ H ₄)
322	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (2-FC ₆ H ₄)

323	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (2-FC ₆ H ₄)
324	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (2-FC ₆ H ₄)
325	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (3-FC ₆ H ₄)
326	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (3-FC ₆ H ₄)
327	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (3-FC ₆ H ₄)
328	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (4-FC ₆ H ₄)
329	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (4-FC ₆ H ₄)
330	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (4-FC ₆ H ₄)
331	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
332	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
333	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
334	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
335	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
336	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
337	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
338	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
339	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
340	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHSO ₂ (2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
341	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
342	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
343	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
344	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
345	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
346	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
347	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
348	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
349	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCOC ₆ H ₅
350	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCOC ₆ H ₅
351	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCOC ₆ H ₅
352	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO[4-CH(CH ₃) ₂ C ₆ H ₄]
353	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO[4-CH(CH ₃) ₂ C ₆ H ₄]
354	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO[4-CH(CH ₃) ₂ C ₆ H ₄]
355	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4- <i>n</i> -pentylC ₆ H ₄)

356	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4- <i>n</i> -pentylC ₆ H ₄)
357	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4- <i>n</i> -pentylC ₆ H ₄)
358	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-FC ₆ H ₄)
359	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-FC ₆ H ₄)
360	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-FC ₆ H ₄)
361	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-FC ₆ H ₄)
362	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-FC ₆ H ₄)
363	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-FC ₆ H ₄)
364	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-FC ₆ H ₄)
365	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-FC ₆ H ₄)
366	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-FC ₆ H ₄)
367	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
368	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
369	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
370	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
371	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
372	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
373	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
374	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
375	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
376	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
377	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
378	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(2-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
379	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
380	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
381	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(3-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
382	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
383	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)
384	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl	-CH ₂ NHCO(4-OCH ₃ C ₆ H ₄)

The compounds of the fourth aspect of Category III can be suitably prepared by the procedure outlined herein below, utilizing intermediates such as **29** as a starting point which can be synthesized by the procedure described in Scheme X.

Scheme XII



Compound **34** can be taken forward in the synthesis of compounds of the fourth aspect of Category III analogs in the same manner as depicted herein above in Scheme X and Scheme XI.

EXAMPLE 9

Isquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide(35)

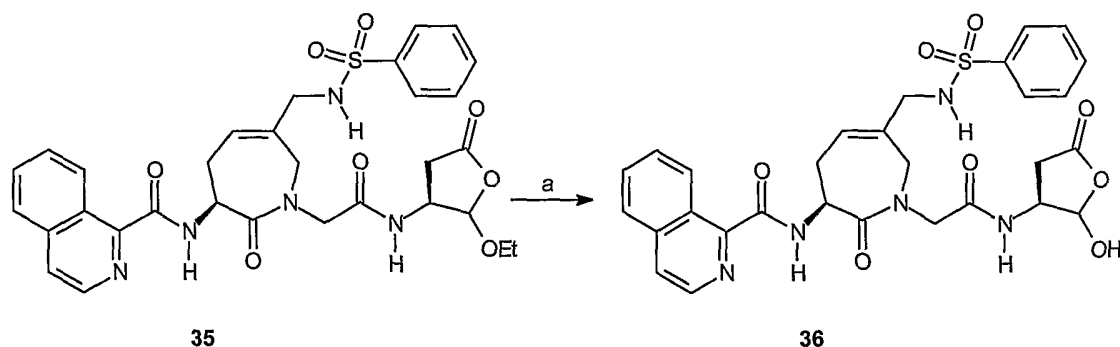
Preparation of {6-(Benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester (34) To {6-aminomethyl-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester (**29**) (0.14 g, 0.37 mmol) in 1 mL THF was added benzene sulfonyl chloride (0.132 mL, 0.75 mmol) and triethyl amine (0.71 mL, 4.99 mmol) were added at rt. The reaction was completed instantly and quenched with 5 mL methanol and the solvent was removed under vacuum. After HPLC purification obtained 84 mg (46%) of **34**. MS 523 (M+H).

Preparation of Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (35):: A solution containing {6-(Benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid methyl ester (**34**) (84mg, 0.17 mmol) in 4 mL of 3:1 THF/H₂O was treated with excess LiOH and stirred for 2.5 h at rt. The solution was acidified and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc layer was dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated to give the crude carboxylic acid.

A catalytic amount of Pd(Ph₃P)₄ is added to a solution of (2-ethoxy-5-oxo-furan-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester (0.24 g, 1.0 mmol) and N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid (0.38 g, 2.4 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL). The solution is stirred for 15 minutes at room temperature after which {6-(Benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-3-[(isoquinoline-1-carbonyl)-amino]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-azepin-1-yl}-acetic acid (0.069 g) is added as a solution in CH₂Cl₂/DMF (2 mL, 1:1), followed by HOBt (0.126 g, 0.93 mmol) and EDCI (0.18 g, 0.93 mmol). The solution is stirred for 5 hours, diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO₃ and brine, dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue is purified over silica (EtOAc/hexane) to afford the desired compound.

The compounds of this category wherein R¹ comprises the cysteine trap 2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl can be prepared by the procedure outlined in Scheme XII as indicated in the following example starting with compound **35**.

Scheme XIII



Reagents and conditions: (a) TFA. CH₃CN, H₂O; rt

EXAMPLE 10

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide(36)

Preparation of Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide (36): A solution of Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide, **35**, as prepared in the above example, in CH₃CN/H₂O is treated with excess trifluoroacetic acid. The solution is stirred several hours then purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC to afford 150 mg (65% yield) of the desired product. ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 9.14-9.11 (d, *J*=8.7 Hz, 1H), 8.55-8.53 (d, *J*=5.4 Hz, 1H), 8.07-8.03 (m, 2H), 7.93-7.85 (m, 3H), 7.81-7.76 (m, 1H), 7.68-7.60 (m, 3H), 5.68 (bs, 1H), 5.49-5.43 (d, d, *J*=12.3, 3.9 Hz, 1H), 4.68-4.62 (m, 2H), 4.41-4.32 (m, 1H), 4.30-4.01 (m, 2H), 3.55-3.48 (m, 3H), 2.81-2.67 (m, 2H), 2.57-2.49 (d, d, d, *J*=16.2, 8.4, 1.2 Hz, 1H), 2.46-2.36 (d, d, *J*=15.0, 15.0 Hz, 1H); MS 608 (M+H).

Other non-limiting examples of compounds which comprise this aspect of Category III include:

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid [(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-(methanesulfonylamino-methyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 9.17-9.14 (d, *J*=8.7 Hz, 1H), 8.57-8.55 (d, *J*=5.7

Hz, 1H), 8.07-8.04 (m, 2H), 7.90-7.85 (d, d, d, $J=8.1, 6.9, 1.2$ Hz, 1H), 7.82-7.76 (d, d, d, $J=8.4, 6.9, 1.5$ Hz, 1H), 5.86 (bs, 1H), 5.62-5.56 (d, d, $J=12.6, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.85-4.79 (bd, $J=17.7$ Hz, 1H), 4.67-4.63 (m, 1H), 4.37-4.18 (m, 3H), 3.71-3.51 (m, 3H), 2.91-2.85 (d, d, $J=18.0, 3.0$ Hz, 1H), 2.76-2.66 (m, 1H), 2.56-2.48 (m, 2H); MS 546 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylamino-methyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.45 (s, 1H), 8.01-7.89 (m, 6H), 7.67-7.55 (m, 5H), 5.67 (bs, 1H), 5.43-5.38 (d, d, $J=12.3, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.69-4.59 (m, 2H), 4.40-4.32 (m, 1H), 4.19 (s, 2H), 3.51 (s, 2H), 3.46-3.45 (d, $J=3.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.77-2.64 (m, 2H), 2.60-2.41 (m, 2H); MS 607 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(4-methoxy-benzenesulfonylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.92 (m, 4H), 7.85-7.82 (d, $J=8.7$ Hz, 2H), 7.64-7.56 (m, 2H), 7.14-7.11 (d, $J=9.3$ Hz, 1H), 5.67 (bs, 1H), 5.41-5.35 (d, d, $J=12.6, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.69-4.66 (d, d, $J=4.8, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.62-4.58 (d, $J=16.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.40-4.31 (m, 1H), 4.25-4.13 (m, 2H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 3.53-3.33 (m, 3H), 2.77-2.64 (m, 2H), 2.57-2.49 (m, 2H); MS 637.4 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-6-[(toluene-3-sulfonylamino)-methyl]-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.91 (m, 4H), 7.72-7.68 (m, 2H), 7.62-7.56 (m, 2H), 7.51-7.49 (m, 2H), 5.67 (bs, 1H), 5.43-5.37 (d, d, $J=12.9, 4.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.69-4.66 (d, d, $J=4.5, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.65-4.59 (d, $J=16.8$ Hz, 1H), 4.40-4.31 (m, 1H), 4.26-4.19 (d, $J=16.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.18-4.12 (d, $J=16.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.53-3.46 (m, 3H), 2.77-2.67 (m, 2H), 2.57-2.49 (m, 2H), 2.47 (s, 3H); MS 621.2 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-6-[(toluene-2-sulfonylamino)-methyl]-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.94 (m, 5H), 7.64-7.52 (m, 3H), 7.44-7.38 (m, 2H), 5.66 (bs, 1H), 5.38-5.33 (d, d, $J=12.6, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.68-4.65 (d, d, $J=5.4, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 4.61-4.55 (d, $J=17.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.37-4.32 (m, 1H), 4.25-4.20 (d, $J=16.5$

Hz, 1H), 4.18-4.12 (d, $J=16.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.61-3.47 (m, 3H), 2.71 (s, 3H), 2.62-2.44 (m, 4H); MS 620.95 (M+H).

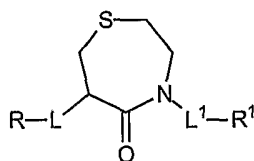
Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-2-oxo-6-[(toluene-4-sulfonylamino)-methyl]-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.44 (s, 1H), 7.98-7.90 (m, 4H), 7.78-7.76 (d, $J=8.4$ Hz, 2H), 7.62-7.53 (m, 2H), 7.42-7.39 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz, 1H), 5.63 (bs, 1h), 5.38-5.33 (d, $J=12.9$, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 4.69-4.66 (d, d, $J=4.8$, 4.2 Hz, 1h), 4.62-4.56 (d, $J=18.3$ Hz, 1H), 4.26-4.20 (d, $J=16.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.18-4.11 (d, $J=16.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.52-3.44 (m, 3H), 2.77-2.67 (m, 2H), 2.60-2.49 (m, 2H), 2.42 (s, 3H); MS 620.67 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-6-[(3-methoxy-benzenesulfonylamino)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 8.44 (s, 1H), 7.99-7.90 (m, 4H), 7.62-7.41 (m, 5H), 7.21-7.18 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz, 1H), 5.66 (bs, 1H), 5.42-5.37 (d, d, $J=12.3$, 4.2 Hz, 1H), 4.69-4.66 (d, d, $J=4.5$, 4.2 Hz, 1H), 4.64-4.59 (d, $J=13.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.41-4.32 (m, 1H), 4.25-4.20 (d, $J=16.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.19-4.13 (d, $J=17.4$ Hz, 1H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.53-3.46 (m, 3H), 2.77-2.67 (m, 2H), 2.57-2.46 (m, 2H); MS 637.3 (M+H).

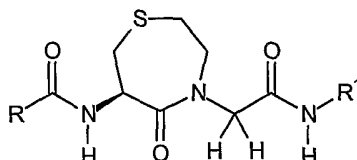
Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[1-(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-6-[(4-methoxy-benzenesulfonylamino)-(3R)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: MS 651 (M+H).

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {1-[1-(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-6-[(4-methoxy-benzenesulfonylamino)-(3S)-methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-yl}-amide: MS 651 (M+H).

The compositions which comprise Category IV or the interleukin- 1β converting enzyme inhibitors according to the present invention comprise a 4,6-substituted-[1,4]thiazepan-5-one ring system scaffold having the formula:



the first aspect of which comprises scaffolds having the formula:



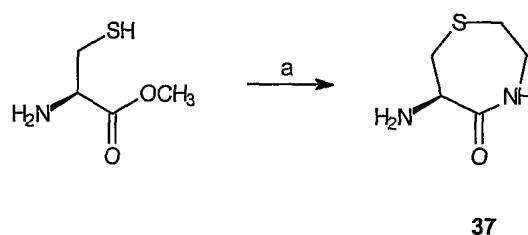
wherein R and R¹ are defined herein below in Table VI

TABLE VI

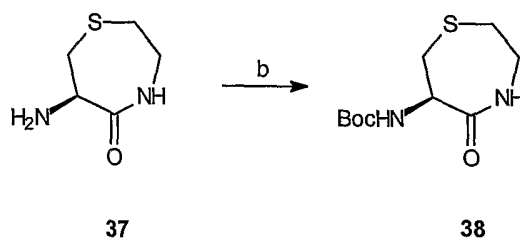
No.	R	R ¹
385	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
386	3-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
387	4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
388	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
389	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
390	3-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
391	4-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
392	3-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
393	4-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
394	3-benzoylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
395	1-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
396	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
397	2-quinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
398	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
399	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
400	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
401	3-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
402	4-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
403	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
404	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
405	3-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl

406	4-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
407	3-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
408	4-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
409	3-benzoylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
410	1-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
411	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
412	2-quinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
413	1-isoquinoliny	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
414	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl

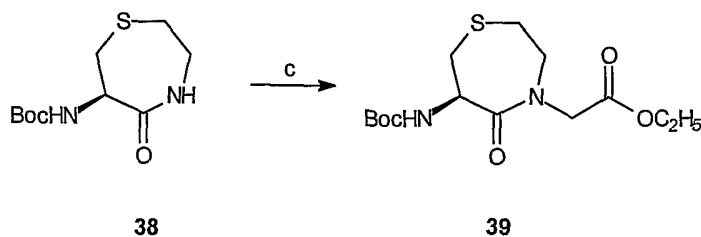
The compounds of Category IV can be suitably prepared by the procedure outlined herein below utilizing intermediate **37** which can be synthesized by the procedure described in Scheme XII.



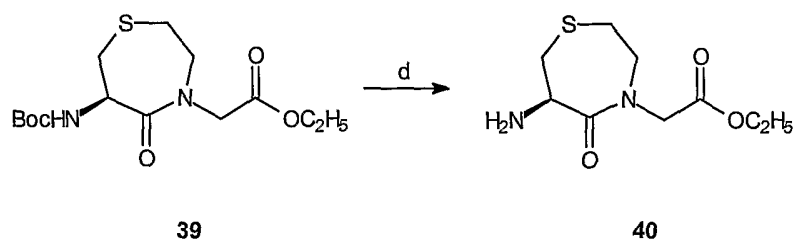
Reagents and conditions: a) aminochloroethane, HCl, Et₃N, MeOH.



Reagents and conditions: b) (Boc)₂O, Et₃N, MeOH.



Reagents and conditions: c) KHMDS, BrCH₂CO₂C₂H₅, THF, -78 °C, 2 hrs.



Reagents and conditions: d) TFA, dichloromethane.

Thiazepinone starting material, 6-amino-[1,4]thiazepan-5-one, **37**, can be prepared from L-cysteine methylester and aminochloroethane hydrochloride via the procedure described by H. Tanaka *et al.*, *FEBS Lett.*, **174**, p. 76 (1984).

Preparation of (5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl)-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester

(38): To a solution of 6-amino-[1,4]thiazepan-5-one (**37**) (2.00 g, 13.70 mmol) in methanol (50 mL) is added Boc_2O (4.50 g, 20.50 mmol) and triethylamine (2.90 mL, 20.50 mmol). The reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture is concentrated *in vacuo* and the crude material obtained purified by flash chromatography on silica gel (EtOAc/hexanes) to afford the desired product **2** (2.40 g, 70%) as a light yellow oil; ^1H NMR (CD_3OD): 6.04 (m, 2H), 4.76 (m, 1H), 3.76 – 2.66 (m, 2H), 2.83 – 2.67 (m, 4H), 1.49 (m, 9H); ESI MS 247.10 (M+H).

Preparation of (6-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-5-oxo-[1,4] thiazepa-4-yl)-acetic acid ethyl ester (39**):** A solution of the (5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl)-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester (**38**) (0.20 g, 0.81 mmol) in THF (10 mL) is cooled to -78°C and KHMDS (0.5 M in Toluene, 2.20 mL, 1.06 mmol) is added followed by ethyl bromoacetate (1.63 mmol, 0.20 mL). The reaction was stirred at -78°C 2 hours. The solution is quenched with saturated ammonium chloride solution and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 X 20 mL). The organic layers are combined and dried over Na_2SO_4 and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting crude oil the desired product **36** is used without further purification.

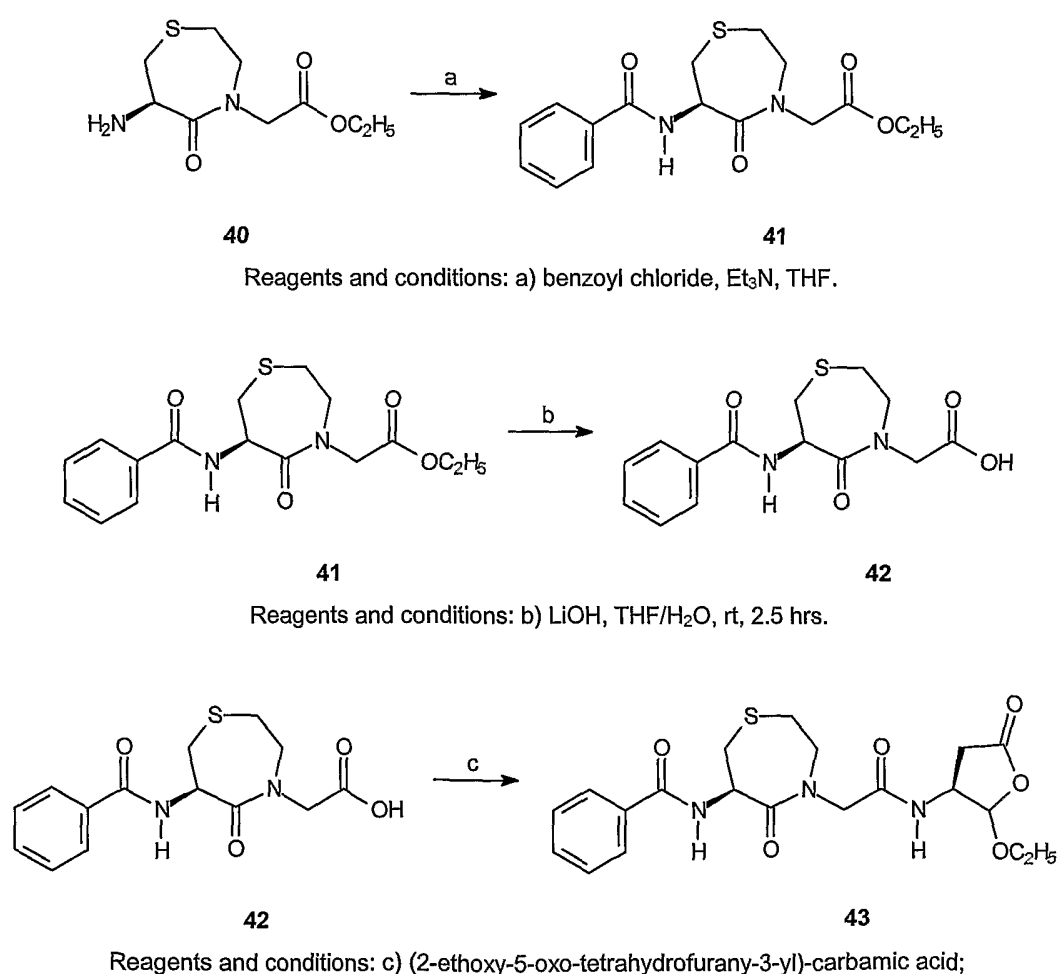
Preparation of (6-amino-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepa-4-yl)-acetic acid ethyl ester **40):**

To a solution of the (6-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-5-oxo-[1,4] thiazepa-4-yl)-acetic acid ethyl ester (**39**) (0.39 g, 1.16 mmol) in dichloromethane (3 mL) is added trifluoroacetic

acid (3 mL). The solution is stirred for 3 hours at room temperature. The solution is concentrated *in vacuo* and treated with saturated NaHCO_3 . Solid NaCl is added to the resulting aqueous solution and the solution is extracted with EtOAc . The organic layer was dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product obtained was then purified by flash chromatography on silica gel (EtOAc /hexanes) to afford the amine **37** (0.20 g, 74 %) as a white foamy solid; ^1H NMR (CD_3OD): δ 4.75 (dd, $J = 2.1, 9.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.36 – 4.18 (m, 4H), 4.12 – 4.03 (m, 1H), 3.86 (ddd, $J = 1.8, 5.7, 16.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.08 (m, 2H), 2.81 – 2.65 (m, 2H), 1.30 (m, 3H); ESI MS 233.09 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$).

Intermediate **40**, prepared by the procedure herein above, can be reacted with a suitable reagent which introduces the selected R unit into the compound scaffold as described in Scheme XIII herein below.

Scheme XIII



N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid, $(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4\text{Pd}$, CH_2Cl_2 , EDCI, HOBT.

EXAMPLE 11

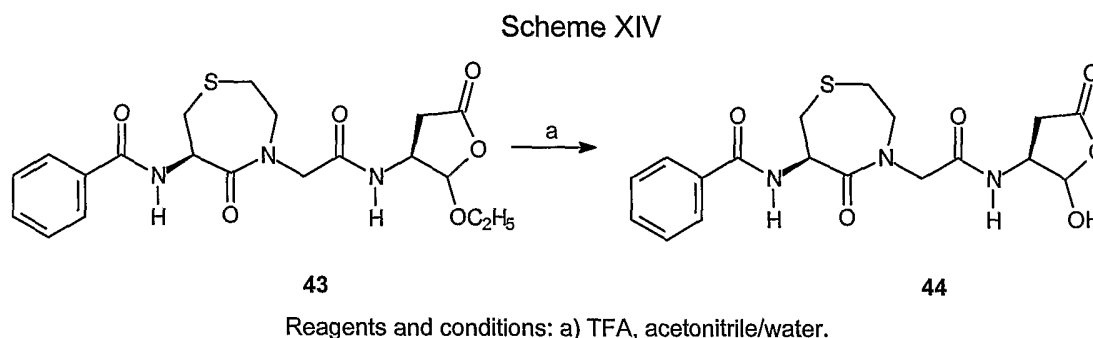
N-{4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-5-oxo-1-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide (43)

Preparation of (6-benzoylamino-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepa-4-yl)-acetic acid ethyl ester (41): A solution of (6-amino-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepa-4-yl)-acetic acid ethyl ester, **40**, (0.40 g, 1.70 mmol) in THF (15 mL) is treated with Et_3N (0.36 mL, 2.59 mmol) followed by benzoyl chloride (0.22 mL, 1.87 mmol). The solution is stirred for 1.5 hours at room temperature before being quenched with MeOH and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product is then purified over silica gel (EtOAc/hexane) to afford (0.48 g, 84%) of the desired product as white crystalline material.

Preparation of (6-benzoylamino-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepa-4-yl)-acetic acid (42): A solution of (6-benzoylamino-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepa-4-yl)-acetic acid ethyl ester, **41**, (0.14 g, 0.41 mmol) in 4 mL of 3:1 THF/ H_2O is treated with excess LiOH and stirred for 2.5 hours at room temperature. The solution is then acidified and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc layer is dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated *in vacuo* to yield the desired product (0.11 g, 84 %).

Preparation of N-{4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-5-oxo-1-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide (43): A catalytic amount of $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ is added to a solution of (2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester (0.21 g, 0.93 mmol) and N,N-dimethylbarbituric acid (0.300, 1.86 mmol) in 15 mL CH_2Cl_2 at room temperature. The solution is stirred at room temperature for 15 minutes and (6-benzoylamino-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepa-4-yl)-acetic acid, **42**, (0.10 g, 0.31 mmol) is added as a solution in 1 mL CH_2Cl_2 , followed by 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.11 g, 0.78 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethyl-aminopropyl)-3-ethyl-carbodiimide hydrochloride (0.15 g, 0.78 mmol). The solution is stirred for 5 hours then diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO_3 , brine, dried (MgSO_4), and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification over silica gel afforded 0.1 g of the desired product (74 % yield).

The compounds of this category wherein R¹ comprises the cysteine trap 2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl can be prepared by the procedure outlined in Scheme VII as indicated in the following example starting with compound **43**.



EXAMPLE 12

***N*-{4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-5-oxo-1-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide (44)**

Preparation of *N*-{4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-5-oxo-1-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide (44): A solution of *N*-{4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-5-oxo-1-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide, **43**, (0.10 g, 0.26 mmol) in acetonitrile/water is treated with trifluoroacetic acid. After stirring for 3 hours the solution is concentrated in vacuo and the crude product purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC to afford (0.06 g, 58 %) of the **8** as a white solid; ¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 7.93 (m, 2H), 7.61 (m, 1H), 7.52 (m, 2H), 5.48 (d, J = 10.5 Hz, 1H), 4.66 – 4.59 (m, 1H), 4.49 (m, 1H), 4.34 (m, 2H), 4.00 (Abq, J = 16.5 Hz, 1H), 3.77 (m, 2H), 3.68 (m, 1H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 3.25 (m, 1H), 2.70 (m, 1H), 2.51 (m, 1H); ESI MS 408.04 (M+H).

Other non-limiting examples of compounds which comprise this aspect of Category III include:

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid-{4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furanyl-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl]benzamide ¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 8.47 (bs, 1H), 8.05 – 7.92 (m, 4H), 7.62 (m, 2H), 5.43 (m, 1H), 4.64 (m, 1H), 4.36 (m, 1H), 4.24 – 4.12 (m,

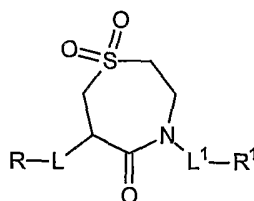
3H), 3.86 (m, 1H), 2.99 (m, 3H), 2.71 (m, 2H), 2.55 (m, 1H), 1.21 (m, 1H); ESI MS 458.09 (M+H).

5-Chloro-N-{4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-2-methyl-benzamide ^1H NMR (CD_3OD): 7.49 (s, 1H), 7.38 (d, $J=6.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.28 (d, $J=8.4$ Hz, 1H), 5.32 (d, $J=7.0$ Hz, 1H), 4.63 (m, 1H), 4.34 (m, 1H), 4.18 (d, 2H), 4.09 (m, 1H), 3.83-3.78 (m, 1H), 3.06-2.93 (m, 2H), 2.88-2.83 (m, 2H), 2.75-2.66 (m, 2H), 2.55 (d, $J=8.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.42 (s, 3H). MS m/z 456 (M+H) $^+$

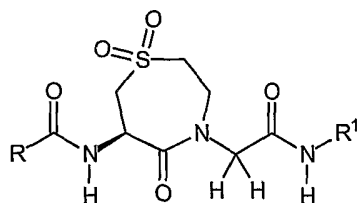
Benzo[b]thiophene-2-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide ^1H NMR (CD_3OD): 8.07 (s, 1H), 7.95 (dd, $J=13.7, 1.5$ Hz, 2H), 7.48 (m, 2H), 5.35 (d, $J=7.3$ Hz, 1H), 4.64 (m, 1H), 4.38-4.28 (m, 1H), 4.21 (dd, $J=8.4, 1.8$ Hz, 2H), 4.18-4.09 (m, 1H), 3.86-3.79 (m, 1H), 3.07-2.98 (m, 2H), 2.92-2.86 (dd, $J=13.9, 2.2$ Hz, 1H), 2.75-2.67 (m, 2H), 2.58-2.52 (m, 2H). MS m/z 464 (M+H) $^+$

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide ^1H NMR (CD_3OD): δ 9.19 (d, $J=8.6$ Hz, 1H), 8.55 (d, $J=5.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.05 (m, 2H), 7.88 (m, 1H), 7.80 (m, 1H), 5.43 (t, 1H), 4.64 (m, 1H), 4.35 (m, 1H), 4.29-4.23 (d, $J=19.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.17-4.10 (m, 2H), 3.85 (m, 1H), 3.34 (m, 1H), 3.00 (m, 2H), 2.75-2.67 (m, 2H), 2.55 (m, 1H). MS m/z 459 (M+H) $^+$

The fifth category of interleukin-1 β converting enzyme inhibitors according to the present invention relates to compounds comprising a 4,6-substituted-[1,4]thiazepan-5-one ring system scaffold having the formula:



the first aspect of which comprises scaffolds having the formula:



wherein R and R¹ are defined herein below in Table VII.

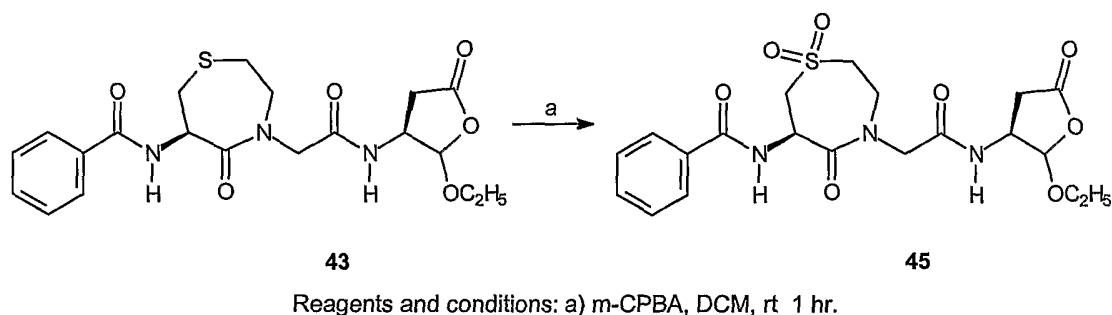
TABLE VII

No.	R	R ¹
415	phenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
416	3-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
417	4-fluorophenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
418	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
419	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
420	3-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
421	4-methoxyphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
422	3-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
423	4-acetylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
424	3-benzoylphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
425	1-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
426	2-naphthyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
427	2-quinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
428	1-isoquinoliny	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
429	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
430	phenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
431	3-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
432	4-fluorophenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
433	3-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
434	4-trifluoromethylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
435	3-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
436	4-methoxyphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
437	3-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
438	4-acetylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
439	3-benzoylphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl

440	1-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
441	2-naphthyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
442	2-quinolinyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
443	1-isoquinolinyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl
444	2-benzothiaphenyl	2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl

The compounds of Category V can be suitably prepared by the procedure outlined herein below utilizing intermediate **43**, which can be synthesized by the procedure described in Scheme XV.

Scheme XV



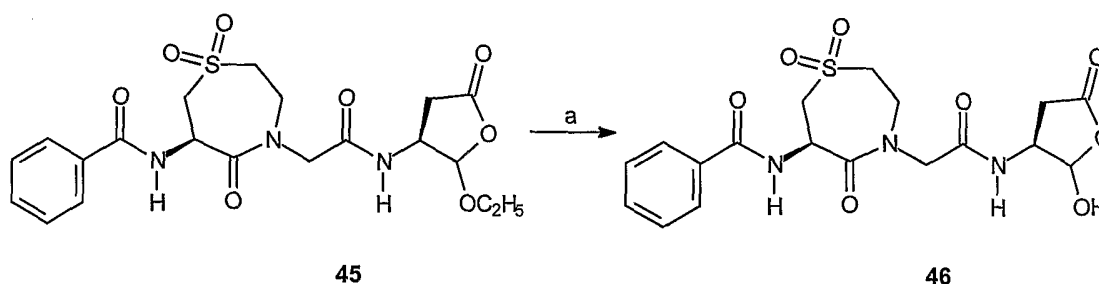
EXAMPLE 13

***N*-{4-[(2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ^6 -[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide (**45**)**

Preparation of *N*-{4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ^6 -[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide (42**):** To a solution of *N*-{4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-5-oxo-1-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide, **40**, (0.02 g, 0.04 mmol) in dichloromethane (3 mL) is added NaHCO₃ (0.01 g, 0.08 mmol) followed by *m*-chloroperbenzoic acid (0.03 g, 0.08 mmol). The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture is then filtered and triturated with ether (3 X 10 mL), and the crude product purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC to afford 0.01 g (71 % yield) of the desired product as a white solid.

The compounds of this category wherein R¹ comprises the cysteine trap 2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl can be prepared by the procedure outlined in Scheme XVI as indicated in the following example starting with compound **45**.

Scheme XVI



Reagents and conditions: a) TFA, acetonitrile/water.

EXAMPLE 14

N-{4-[(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-1,1,5-trioxo-1λ⁶-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide (46)

Preparation of N-{4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-1,1,5-trioxo-1λ⁶-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide (46): A solution of N-{4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-1,1,5-trioxo-1λ⁶-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide, **45**, (0.03 g, 0.05 mmol) in acetonitrile/water is treated with trifluoroacetic acid. After stirring for 3 hours the solution is concentrated *in vacuo* and the crude product purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC to afford 0.02 g (77 % yield) of the desired product as a white solid.) ¹H NMR (CD₃OD): δ 7.90 (m, 2H), 7.62 – 7.46 (m, 3H), 5.46 (d, J = 10.5 Hz, 1H), 4.61 (m, 1H), 4.51 (dd, J = 16.3, 5.1 Hz, 1H), 4.36 (m, 2H), 4.02 (dd, J = 16.0, 3.3 Hz, 1H), 3.84 – 3.64 (m, 3H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 3.26 (m, 1H), 2.68 (m, 1H), 2.52 (m, 1H); ESI MS 440.06 (M+H).

Other non-limiting examples of compounds which comprise this aspect of Category III include:

5-Chloro-N-{4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)carbamoyl]-methyl}-1,1,5-trioxo-1λ⁶-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-2-methyl-benzamide ¹H NMR (CD₃OD): 7.55 (d,

J=1.2 Hz, 1H), 7.40 (dd, J=8.2, 2.2 Hz, 1H), 7.28 (d, J= 8.0 Hz, 1H), 5.43 (d, J=11.0 Hz, 1H), 4.63 (m, 1H), 4.54-4.48 (dd, J=16.6, 4.7 Hz, 1H), 4.35 (m, 2H), 4.01 (dd, J=16.1, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 3.84-3.74 (m, 2H), 3.68 (m, 1H), 3.42-3.35 (m, 2H), 2.67 (m, 1H), 2.54 (m, 1H), 2.43 (s, 3H). MS m/z 488 (M+H)

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid{4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furanyl-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ ⁶-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}benzamide ¹H NMR

(CD₃OD): δ 8.49 (bs, 1H), 8.04 (m, 4H), 7.62 (m, 2H), 5.54 (d, J = 10.2 Hz, 1H), 4.64 (m, 1H), 4.53 (dd, J = 16.5, 5.7 Hz, 1H), 4.36 (m, 2H), 4.05 (Abq, J = 16.5 Hz, 1H), 3.87 – 3.69 (m, 3H), 3.50 (m, 1H), 3.26 (m, 1H), 2.68 (m, 1H), 2.53 (m, 1H); ESI MS 490.08 (M+H).

Benzo[b]thiophene-2-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ ⁶-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide ¹H NMR

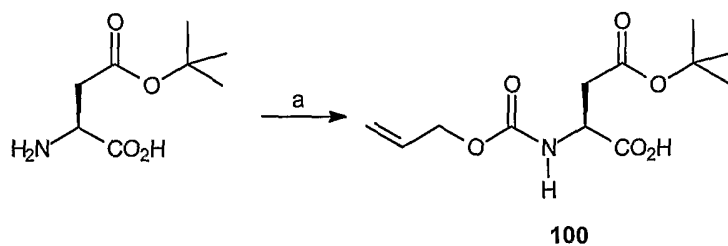
(CD₃OD): 8.08 (s, 1H), 7.94 (dd, J=4.7, 3.0 Hz, 2H), 7.47 (m, 2H), 5.48 (d, J=10.6 Hz, 1H), 4.64 (m, 1H), 4.55-4.48 (dd, J= 16.5, 5.5 Hz, 1H), 4.38-4.29 (m, 2H), 4.07-4.01 (dd, J=16.3, 3.4 Hz, 1H), 3.85-3.73 (m, 2H), 3.72-3.68 (d, J=11.0, 1H), 3.48-3.44 (dd, J=13.9, 3.0 Hz, 1H), 3.35-3.28 (m, 1H), 2.73-2.66 (m, 1H), 2.56-2.53 (m, 1H). MS m/z 494 (M+H)

Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-ylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ ⁶-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide ¹H NMR (CD₃OD):

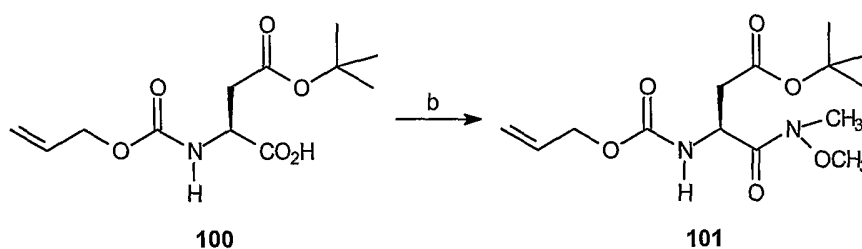
9.27 (d, J=9.2 Hz, 1H), 8.56 (d, 1H), 8.03 (d, J=6.6 Hz, 2H), 7.88-7.75 (m, 2H), 5.56-5.53 (d, J=10.6 Hz, 1H), 4.67-4.63 (m, 1H), 4.51-4.44 (dd, J=16.3, 3.8 Hz, 1H), 4.40-4.32 (m, 2H), 4.17-4.11 (d, J=16.9 Hz, 1H), 3.86-3.74 (m, 2H), 3.70-3.60 (m, 1H), 3.55-3.51 (m, 1H), 3.38-3.29 (m, 1H), 2.74-2.67 (m, 1H), 2.58-2.54 (m, 1H). MS m/z 491 (M+H)

The cysteine traps of the present invention can be prepared by any convenient method selected by the formulator. The following is a description of the preparation of (2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester which is used to introduce one category of cysteine trap into the scaffolds of the present invention.

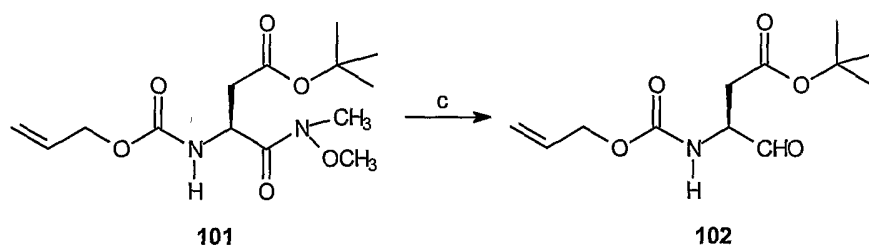
Scheme XVIII



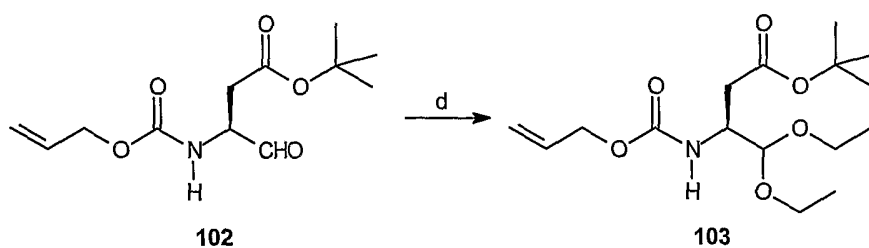
Reagents and conditions: (a) allyl chloroformate, NaHCO_3 , THF/ H_2O (3:1).



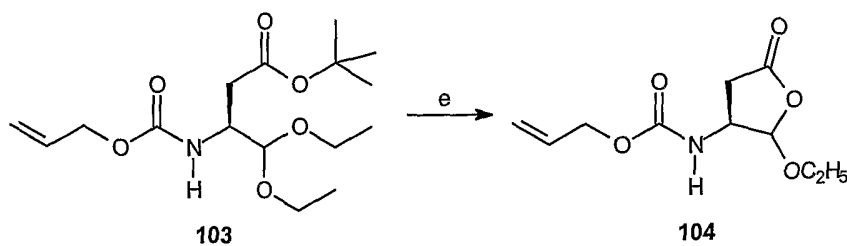
Reagents and conditions: (b) $\text{H}_3\text{CONHCH}_3$, NMM, EDCI, CH_2Cl_2 .



Reagents and conditions: (c) LAH, THF/ H_2O (3:1).



Reagents and conditions: (d) $\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_3$, PTSA, EtOH.



Reagents and conditions: (e) TFA, CH_2Cl_2 .

EXAMPLE 13

(2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester (104)**Preparation of 2-allyloxycarbonylamino-succinic acid 4-tert-butyl ester**

(100): L-aspartic acid β -t-butyl ester (30.3 g, 0.160 mol) is dissolved in 100 mL THF and 300 mL H₂O. Under cooling (ice bath) and with stirring, allyl chloroformate (38.8 mL, 44.1 g, 0.365 mol) and sodium bicarbonate (60.1 g, 0.715 mol) are added in one portion. After the consumption of the starting material, the mixture is acidified to a pH of 2 using 6 N HCl and then extracted with ether (3 $\times$ 400 mL). The ether layer is dried with MgSO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue is purified over silica (CH₂Cl₂/MeOH/acetic acid 3:97:0.1) to furnish 40.7 g (90% yield) of the desired product as a clear oil.

Preparation of 3-allyloxycarbonylamino-N-methoxy-N-methyl-succinamic

acid tert-butyl ester (101): 2-Allyloxycarbonylamino-succinic acid 4-tert-butyl ester, **100**, (43.4 g, 0.159 mol) is dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (900 mL). To this solution O,N-dimethyl-hydroxylamine hydrochloride (18.6 g, 0.191 mol), 4-Methyl-morpholine (21.0 mL, 19.3 g, 0.191 mol), and 1-(3-Dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (36.6 g, 0.191 mol) are added. After the consumption of the starting material, the solution is washed with 1.0 N HCl (2 $\times$ 400 mL) and brine (1 $\times$ 250 mL). The organic layer is concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue purified over silica (hexanes/ethyl acetate 65:35) to afford 40.8 g (81% yield) of the desired product as a clear oil.

Preparation of 3-allyloxycarbonylamino-4-oxo-butyric acid tert-butyl ester

(102): A solution of 3-allyloxycarbonylamino-N-methoxy-N-methyl-succinamic acid tert-butyl ester, **101**, (24.3 g, 76.8 mmol) in THF (60 mL) is treated at -78°C with lithium aluminum hydride (1 M in THF, 39 mL, 39 mmol) dissolved in ether (200 mL) over 5 minutes. After the consumption of starting material, the solution is cautiously quenched with 1.0 N HCl, washed with 1.0 N HCl (2 $\times$ 100 mL) and brine (1 $\times$ 150 mL). The organic layer is concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 18.2 g (91% yield) of the desired product as a clear oil.

Preparation of 3-allyloxycarbonylamino-4,4-diethoxy-butyric acid *tert*-butyl ester (103): To a solution of 3-allyloxycarbonylamino-4-oxo-butyric acid *tert*-butyl ester, **102**, (13.3 g, 51.7 mmol) in anhydrous ethanol (75 mL) is added ethyl orthoformate (45 mL, 0.270 mol), p-toluenesulfonic acid (0.15 g, cat.) and 4Å molecular sieves (10 g, kiln dried) under N₂. After the consumption of starting material, the sieves are removed by filtration and the solvent removed *in vacuo* to provide the desired compound as a clear oil which is used directly without further purification. MS (ESI): m/e=332.21 (M+H).

Preparation of (2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-carbamic acid allyl ester (104). A solution of the crude 3-Allyloxycarbonylamino-4,4-diethoxy-butyric acid *tert*-butyl ester, **103**, obtained in the procedure above, in CH₂Cl₂ (50 mL) is treated with trifluoroacetic acid (50 mL). After the consumption of starting material, the organics are reduced under vacuum. The residual trifluoroacetic acid is removed with ethyl acetate by azeotropic conditions. The final residue is purified over silica (hexanes/ethyl acetate 80:20) to afford 10.1 g (85% yield) of the desired product as a slightly yellow oil. ¹H-NMR, (300 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 1.23 (m, 3H), 2.41–2.54 (m, 1H), 2.82–3.06 (m, 2H), 3.61–3.73 (m, 1H), 3.82–3.98 (m, 1H), 4.06–4.25 (m, 1H), 4.61 (br s, 2H), 5.24–5.53 (m, 3H), 5.86–6.01 (m, 1H); MS (ESI): m/e=230.03 (M+H).

The following are non-limiting examples of other analogs prepared by the procedures described herein above.

N-{1-[(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)carbonyl)methyl]-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;

N-{1-[(2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)carbonyl)methyl]-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;

N-{1-[(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-carbonyl)methyl]-6-(benzenesulfonylaminomethyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;

N-{1-[(2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-carbonyl)methyl]-6-(benzenesulfonylaminomethyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide

- Naphthalene-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Naphthalene-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Naphthalene-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylaminomethyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Naphthalene-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylaminomethyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Naphthylene-1-carboxylic acid {6-benzylaminomethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Naphthylene-1-carboxylic acid {6-benzylaminomethyl-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-6-methyl-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylaminomethyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylaminomethyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(methylsulfonylaminomethyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;

- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzenesulfonylaminomethyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzoylaminomethyl)-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-(benzoylaminomethyl)-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-morpholinomethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-morpholinomethyl-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-allylaminomethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-allylaminomethyl-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-phenylaminomethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-phenylaminomethyl-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-benzylaminomethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-benzylaminomethyl-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;

- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-piperidin-1-ylmethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-piperidin-1-ylmethyl-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-hydroxymethyl-1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {6-hydroxymethyl-1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Benzo[*b*]thiophene-2-carboxylic {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Benzo[*b*]thiophene-2-carboxylic {1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide.
- N*-{1-[(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;
- N*-{1-[(2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Naphthylene-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Naphthylene-1-carboxylic acid {1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Benzo[*b*]thiophene-2-carboxylic {1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- Benzo[*b*]thiophene-2-carboxylic {1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-carbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-amide;
- 3-Fluoro-*N*-{1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;

- 3-Fluoro-*N*-{1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;
- 3-Trifluoromethyl-*N*-{1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;
- 3-Trifluoromethyl-*N*-{1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;
- 3-Acetyl-*N*-{1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;
- 3-Acetyl-*N*-{1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;
- 3-Benzoyl-*N*-{1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;
- 3-Benzoyl-*N*-{1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;
- 3-Methoxy-*N*-{1-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide;
- 3-Methoxy-*N*-{1-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl}-benzamide.
- N*-{4-[(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide;
- N*-{4-[(2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide;
- Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide;
- Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide;
- Isoquinoline-1-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide;
- 3-Fluoro-*N*-{4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide;
- 3-Fluoro-*N*-{4-[(2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide;

3-Trifluoromethyl-*N*-{4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide;

3-Trifluoromethyl-*N*-{4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-5-oxo-[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide.

N-{4-[(2-Hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofurany-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ^6 -[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide;

N-{4-[(2-Ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofurany-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ^6 -[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-benzamide;

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofurany-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ^6 -[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide;

Naphthalene-2-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofurany-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ^6 -[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide;

Isoquinolin-1-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-hydroxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofurany-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ^6 -[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide;

Isoquinolin-1-carboxylic acid {4-[(2-ethoxy-5-oxo-tetrahydrofurany-3-ylcarbamoyl)methyl]-1,1,5-trioxo-1 λ^6 -[1,4]thiazepan-6-yl}-amide.

FORMULATIONS

The present invention also relates to compositions or formulations which comprise the interleukin-1 β converting enzyme inhibitors according to the present invention. In general, the compositions of the present invention comprise:

- a) an effective amount of one or more interleukin-1 β converting enzyme inhibitors according to the present invention; and
- b) one or more pharmaceutically acceptable excipients.

For the purposes of the present invention the term "excipient" and "carrier" are used interchangeably throughout the description of the present invention and said terms are defined herein as, "ingredients which are used in the practice of formulating a safe and effective pharmaceutical composition."

The formulator will understand that excipients are used primarily to serve in delivering a safe, stable, and functional pharmaceutical, serving not only as part of the overall vehicle for delivery but also as a means for achieving effective absorption by the recipient of the active ingredient. An excipient may fill a role as simple and direct as being an inert filler, or an excipient as used herein may be part of a pH stabilizing system

or coating to insure delivery of the ingredients safely to the stomach. The formulator can also take advantage of the fact the compounds of the present invention have improved cellular potency, pharmacokinetic properties, as well as improved oral bioavailability.

METHOD OF USE

The present invention also relates to methods for controlling the activity of Caspase enzymes. Caspase enzymes are responsible for mediating the extracellular release of cytokines. Because the control of Caspase enzyme activity directly affects a number of disease states and disease processes in humans and higher mammals, the present invention also comprises a method for controlling a number of diseases found to afflict humans and higher mammals.

The first aspect of the methods of the present invention relate to methods for mediating and controlling the extracellular release of the cytokine interleukin-1 β . This cytokine activity is modulated by reversibly or irreversibly inhibiting interleukin-1 β converting enzyme (Caspase-1, ICE). The method comprises the step of administering to a human or higher mammal an effective amount of a composition comprising one or more of the interleukin-1 β converting enzyme inhibitors according to the present invention.

In a second aspect, as stated herein, Caspase-1 (ICE) is responsible for the cleavage of the inactive precursor of interleukin-1 β (IL-1 β) to release the active cytokine interleukin-1 β . It has been discovered that Caspase-1 is localized to monocyte membranes and therefore inflammatory disorders caused by or otherwise exacerbated by the extracellular presence of the cytokine IL-1 β can be treated by the inhibition of Caspase-1.^{1,2} These inflammatory disorders include rheumatoid arthritis.

Regulation of the enzyme Caspase-1, (ICE) by way of administering a composition capable of reversibly or irreversibly inhibiting said enzymes, provides a method for controlling, modulating, mediating, or otherwise abating the inflammation of joints and other forms of synovial tissue associated with osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis.

It is now recognized that in addition to degeneration of neurons associated with Huntington's disease, Caspase-3 expression is up-regulated in apoptotic hippocampal neurons from Alzheimer's disease patients.³

Regulation of the enzyme Caspase-3 by way of administering a composition capable of reversibly or irreversibly inhibiting said enzymes, provides a method for controlling, modulating, mediating, or otherwise abating the hippocampal neuron damage associated with Alzheimer's disease because of the over expression of one or more Caspase enzymes and the extracellular release of cytokines.

There is a growing preponderance of evidence to indicate that one or more Caspase enzymes are inappropriately activated in neurogenerative disorders and contribute to the death of neurons, in fact, activated Caspase-8 has been identified in degenerating neurons from Huntington's disease patients.⁴ Caspase-1 has been implicated as a mediating factor in cell apoptosis. Apoptosis itself is the most common mechanism by which an organism removes unwanted or damaged cells and this ability is critically important during normal tissue development, *inter alia*, homeostasis, remodeling, immune response, and defense processes. Apoptosis is, therefore, implicated as contributing to several neurological disorders including Huntington's disease.⁵

Regulation of the enzyme Caspase-1, (ICE) and/or the enzyme Caspase-8, individually or collectively, by way of administering a composition capable of reversibly or irreversibly inhibiting said enzymes, provides a method for controlling, modulating, mediating, or otherwise abating the neurogenerative disorders associated with Huntington's disease.

As can be seen from the above, cell apoptosis, as well as up regulation of Caspase enzymes is a cause for not only inflammatory disease (arthritis and the like) but the degeneration of neurons and the cause of associated neurological disorders, *inter alia*, Parkinson's disease, Huntington's Disease and Alzheimer's disease.

The present invention therefore encompasses a method for treating separately or collectively one or more diseases, said method comprising the step of contacting a human or higher mammal with a composition comprising one or more of the Caspase inhibitors of the present invention.

As it relates to the specifically controlling the extracellular release of IL-1 this cytokine has been implicated as a major catabolic cytokine in the degenerative cascade leading to the loss of cartilage in osteoarthritic patients⁶ and to joint inflammation and the associated pain.⁷ Indeed, interleukin-1 β converting enzyme (ICE) is presently the only enzyme known to be responsible for the release of interleukin-1 β . This release occurs

when the precursor form of interleukin-1 β is converted to an active form, which is then released extracellularly. It has been discovered that the presence of joint synovitis and synovial effusion in osteoarthritic patients is the direct response to the local formation of pro-inflammatory cytokines, particularly, interleukin-1 β .⁸

Osteoarthritis is a degenerative articular disorder associated with progressive structural changes in cartilage, bone and synovial tissue leading to the total loss of cartilage and joint function. It has been found that interleukin-1 β is elevated in chondrocytes derived from osteoarthritic joints as compared to normal non-arthritic cartilage and synovium. It has been reported that inhibition of interleukin-1 β using an ICE inhibitor significantly reduces cartilage proteoglycan loss in the collagen-induced arthritis model.⁹

It has now been surprisingly found that administering one or more of said compounds comprises a method for controlling or modulating the loss of cartilage in osteoarthritic patients. In addition, administering said compounds comprises a method for controlling or modulating the joint inflammation and pain associated with the swelling of tissue associated with extracellular release of cytokines.

The compounds of the present invention can be administered prophylactically. For example, in cases wherein inflammation and cartilage damage is anticipated because of ageing or other high risk, *inter alia*, obesity, sports activity or which inflammation and damage is anticipated as a side effect resulting from the treatment of a more severe disease state (e.g. via chemotherapy).

Because the interleukin-1 β converting enzyme inhibitors of the present invention can be delivered in a manner wherein more than one site of control can be achieved, more than one disease state can be modulated at the same time. Non-limiting examples of diseases which are affected by control or inhibition of interleukin-1 β converting enzyme, thereby modulating the presence of IL-1 β (excessive cytokine activity), include osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, diabetes, human Immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection.

A method for controlling osteoarthritis in humans or higher mammals, said method comprising the step of administering to a human or higher mammal and effective amount of a composition comprising one or more of the interleukin-1 β converting enzyme inhibitors

The following citations footnoted herein above are included herein by reference.

1. Schreiber, R. D. *et al.*, In *Samter's Immunologic Diseases*: Frank, M. M. *et al.* Eds.: Little, Brown and Co.: Boston, MA. (1994); 279-310.
2. Ghayur T.; *et al.*, *High Throughput Screening for Novel Anti-Inflammatories*. Khan M. (Ed.) Birkhauser Verlag Publishers, Basel, Switzerland (2000) 35-48.
3. Gervais, F. *et al.*, *Cell* (1999), **97**, 395-406.
4. Sánchez, I.; *et al.*, *Neuron* (1999), **22**, 623-633.
5. Perutz, M. F.; *et al.*, *Trends Biochem. Sci.* (1999), **24**(2) 58-63
6. J-P Pelletier *et al.*, "Cytokines and Inflammation in Cartilage Degradation": in *Osteoarthritis, Rheumatic Disease Clinics of North America*, ed. R. W. Moskowitz, (Philadelphia: W. B. Sanders, 1993), 545-568.
7. F. Fernandez-Madrid *et al.*, "Magnetic Resonance Features of Osteoarthritis of the Knee," *J. Magn. Reson. Imaging*, 12 (1994): 703-709.
8. S. A. Stimpson *et al.*, "Exacerbation of Arthritis by IL-1 in Rat Joints Previously Injured by Peptidoglycan-Polysaccharide," *J. Immunol.* 140 (1988): 2964-2969.
9. W. B. van den Berg *et al.*, "Amelioration of Established Murine Collagen-induced Arthritis with anti-IL-1 Treatment," *Clin. Exp. Immunol.* 95, (1994): 237-243.

PROCEDURES

The compounds of the present invention can be evaluated for efficacy, for example, measurements of ICE inhibition constants, K_i , and IC_{50} values can be obtained by any method chosen by the formulator. Conveniently the formulator can measure the release of, *inter alia*, IL-1 β or cleavage of substrates by Caspase-1, Caspase-3, and Caspase-8.

THP-1 cells are human monocyte cells (mononuclear cells) which are utilized to determine *in vitro* cytokine inhibition. THP-1 cells, like other cell types, respond to extracellular stimulation. These stimuli include cytokines, as well as lipopolysaccharides (LPS), endotoxins, and even ultra violet light. The specific cellular response elicited by these various forms of stimuli are mediated or otherwise regulated by one or more cellular enzymes.

In the case of Caspase-1 enzyme, a signaling cascade, which includes the release of pro-inflammatory cytokines, *inter alia*, interleukin-1 α , interleukin-1 β , and TNF- α can be taken advantage of to determine the ability of chemical species to inhibit the enzyme and consequent release of said cytokines. The enzymes are themselves

implicated in various disease states and processes, including cartilage degradation associated with arthritis.

One *in vitro* assay used to establish activity (preliminary screening) of relevant compounds of the present invention includes the following general concepts and procedures. A control sample of THP-1 cells is first stimulated to release a cytokine, in this case IL-1 β , exposing the cell to LPS. The THP-1 cells which are utilized to measure suppression of cytokine release, are first incubated with the inhibitors of the present invention prior to stimulation with LPS. The supernatant from each screening sample is analyzed by standard hIL-1 β ELISA protocol. The cells which remain after removal of the supernatant are treated with MTS tetrazolium to establish cell viability.

The *in vitro* results are reported as the IC₅₀, defined herein as:

$$IC_{50} = \frac{[I]}{\left[\frac{V_o}{V_i} \right] - 1}$$

wherein V_i is the initial rate of substrate cleaved in the presence of the test compound at concentration [I], and V_o is the rate of substrate cleavage in the control sample.

Non-limiting examples of suitable assays include:

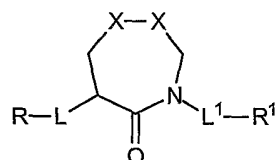
- i) UV-visible substrate enzyme assay as described by L. Al Reiter, *Int. J. Peptide Protein Res.*, **43**, 87-96 (1994).
- ii) Fluorescent substrate enzyme assay as described by Thornberry et al., *Nature*, **356**, 768-774 (1992) and Thornberry et al., *Biochemistry*, **33**, 393-3940 (1994).
- iii) PBMC Cell assay as described in U.S. 6,204,261 B1 Batchelor et al., issued March 20, 2001.

All documents cited in the Detailed Description of the Invention are, are, in relevant part, incorporated herein by reference; the citation of any document is not to be construed as an admission that it is prior art with respect to the present invention.

While particular embodiments of the present invention have been illustrated and described, it would be obvious to those skilled in the art that various other changes and modifications can be made without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. It is therefore intended to cover in the appended claims all such changes and modifications that are within the scope of this invention.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. An interleukin-1 β converting enzyme inhibitor, including all enantiomeric and diastereomeric forms and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, said inhibitor having the formula:



wherein each X is independently selected from:

- i) $-\text{C}(\text{W})_2-$;
 - ii) $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$;
 - iii) $-\text{NR}^2-$;
 - iv) $-\text{S}-$;
 - v) $-\text{S}(\text{O})-$;
 - vi) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
 - vii) two units, one from each adjacent X unit, can be taken together to form a substituted or unsubstituted double bond having the formula $-\text{CW}=\text{CW}-$; wherein each W is hydrogen or a unit having the formula $-(\text{L}^2)_j-\text{R}^2$, the index j is 0 or 1;
- R is a carbocyclic or heterocyclic aryl ring;

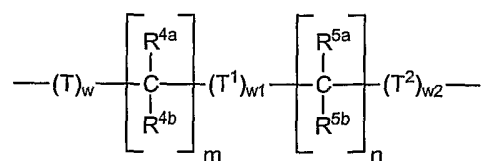
R¹ is a cysteine trap;

each R² is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) a hydrocarbyl unit having the formula: $-\text{C}(\text{R}^3)_2(\text{CH}=\text{CH})_q\text{R}^3$;
- iii) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^3$;
- iv) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{AR}^3$;
- v) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})[\text{C}(\text{R}^3)_2]_p(\text{CH}=\text{CH})_q\text{R}^3$;
- vi) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- vii) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{NR}^3\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- viii) $-\text{CN}$;
- xix) $-\text{CF}_3$;
- x) $-\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xi) $-\text{NR}^3\text{CN}$;

- xii) $-\text{NR}^3\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^3$;
- xiii) $-\text{NR}^3\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xiv) $-\text{NHN}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xv) $-\text{NHR}^3$;
- xvi) $-\text{NO}_2$;
- xvii) $-\text{OR}^3$;
- xviii) $-\text{OCF}_3$;
- xix) $-\text{F}$, $-\text{Cl}$, $-\text{Br}$, or $-\text{I}$;
- xx) $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$;
- xxi) $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$;
- xxii) $-\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xxiii) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^3$;
- xxiv) $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^3)\text{R}^3$;
- xxv) $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^3)_2$;
- xxvi) and mixtures thereof;

each R^3 is independently hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{20} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C_6 - C_{20} aryl, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl; Z is $-\text{O}-$, $-\text{S}-$, $-\text{NR}^3-$, and mixtures thereof; M is hydrogen, or a salt forming cation; the index p is from 0 to 12; the index q is from 0 to 12; L, L^1 , and L^2 are each independently a linking group having the formula:



T , T^1 , and T^2 are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) $-\text{NR}^6-$;
- ii) $-\text{O}-$;
- iii) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- iv) $-\text{NR}^6\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- v) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^6-$; and
- vi) mixtures thereof;

R^6 is hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{10} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, C_6 - C_{10} aryl, C_7 - C_{12} alkylenearyl, and mixtures thereof; the indices w , w^1 , and w^2 are each independently 0 or 1;

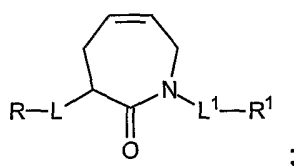
R^{4a} , R^{4b} , R^{5a} , and R^{5b} are each independently:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) C_1 - C_4 linear, branched, and cyclic alkyl;
- iii) R^{4a} and R^{4b} or R^{5a} , and R^{5b} can be taken together to form a carbonyl unit;
- iv) two R^{4a} or two R^{4b} units from adjacent carbon atoms or two R^{5a} or two R^{5b} units from adjacent carbon atoms can be taken together to form a double bond; and
- v) mixtures thereof;

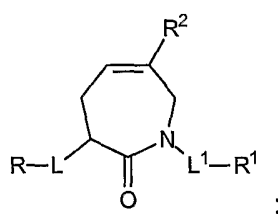
the index m is from 0 to 5; the index n is from 0 to 5.

2. A compound according to Claim 1 comprising a scaffold having the formula:

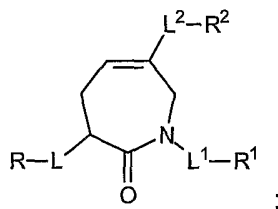
i)



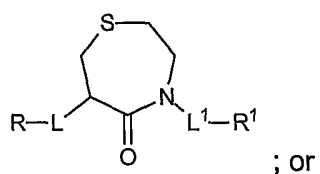
ii)



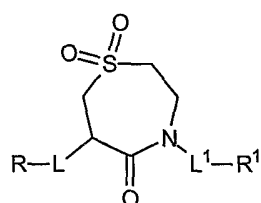
iii)



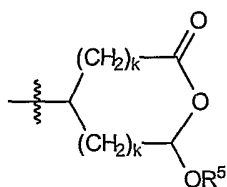
iv)



v)



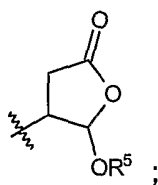
3. A compound according to either Claim 1 or 2 wherein R¹ is a reversible cysteine trap having the formula:



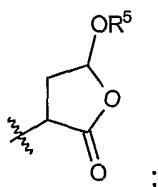
wherein R⁵ is hydrogen; C₁-C₄ alkyl; substituted or unsubstituted C₆-C₁₀ aryl; and substituted or unsubstituted alkylenearyl; each index k is independently 0, 1, or 2.

4. A compound according to any of Claims 1- 3 wherein R¹ is a reversible cysteine trap having the formula:

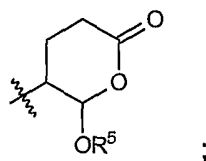
a)



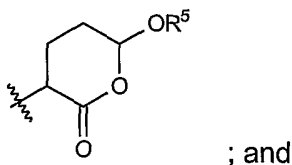
b)



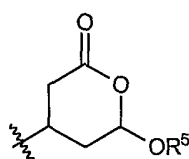
c)



d)

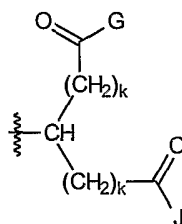


e)



wherein R^5 is hydrogen, C_1 - C_4 alkyl, or benzyl.

5. A compound according to any of Claims 1-4 wherein R^1 is a reversible cysteine trap having the formula:

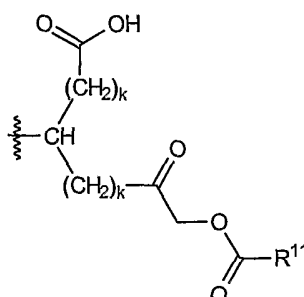


wherein G is $-OH$ or a labile unit and J is a unit selected from the group:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) substituted or unsubstituted aryl;
- iii) substituted or unsubstituted alkylenearyl;
- iv) substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl;
- v) $-CH_2N(R^{21})_2$;
- vi) $-C(O)R^{21}$;
- vii) $-C(O)N(R^{21})_2$; and
- viii) $-C(O)OR^{21}$;

R^{21} is hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, substituted or unsubstituted alkylenearyl, and substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl; each index k is independently 0, 1, or 2.

6. A compound according to Claim 5 wherein R¹ is a cysteine trap having the formula:



wherein R¹¹ is a substituted aryl unit.

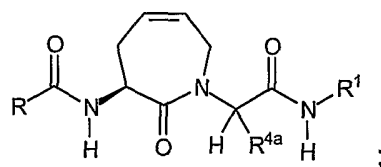
7. A compound according to any of Claims 1-6 wherein L, L¹, and L² are each independently selected from the group consisting of:
- C(O)NH-;
 - NHC(O)-;
 - NHC(O)NH-;
 - C(O)C(O)-;
 - C(O)-;
 - C(O)O-;
 - OC(O)-;
 - NH-;
 - NHS(O)₂-;
 - S(O)₂NH-;
 - S(O)₂-;
 - and mixtures thereof.
8. A compound according to any of Claims 1-7 wherein R is a substituted or unsubstituted carbocyclic ring selected from the group consisting of phenyl, 2-fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 3-fluoro-4-methylphenyl, 3-fluoro-4-methoxyphenyl, 3-chloro-2-methylphenyl, 3-chloro-6-methylphenyl, 3-chloro-4-methoxyphenyl, 3-chloro-4-hydroxyphenyl, 3,5-difluorophenyl, 2,6-dichlorophenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 3-chlorophenyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 3,4-dichlorophenyl, 3,5-dichlorophenyl, 3-chloro-4-fluorophenyl, 2-bromophenyl, 3-bromophenyl, 4-

bromophenyl, 2-methylphenyl, 3-methylphenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 3,5-dimethylphenyl, 2-ethylphenyl, 3-ethylphenyl, 4-ethylphenyl, 3-ethyl-4-methylphenyl, 3-propylphenyl, 3-butylphenyl, 2-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 2-ethoxyphenyl, 3-ethoxyphenyl, 4-ethoxyphenyl, 4-propoxyphenyl, 4-butoxyphenyl, 3,4,5-trimethoxyphenyl, 3-aminonaphth-2-yl, 4-dimethylaminonaphth-1-yl, 2-aminophenyl, 3-aminophenyl, 4-aminophenyl, 3,4-dimethylaminophenyl, 4-amino-3-chlorophenyl, 4-amino-3,5-dichlorophenyl, 4-dimethylaminophenyl, 2-acetylaminophenyl, 3-acetylaminophenyl, 4-acetylaminophenyl, 4-isobutylaminophenyl, 4-propionylamino-phenyl, 4-butyraminophenyl, 4-phenylacetylaminophenyl, 3,4-diacetylaminophenyl, 4-(*N*-acetyl-*N*-methylamino)-phenyl, 4-benzoylaminophenyl, 4-(2-trifluoromethylphenyl), 3-trifluoromethylphenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 4-hydroxymethyl-phenyl, naphth-1-yl, naphth-2-yl, 4-biphenyl, 4-phenoxyphenyl, 4-(3-methyl-ureido)-phenyl, 4-sulfamoylphenyl, 3-acetylphenyl, 4-acetylphenyl, 3-hydroxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 4-benzyloxyphenyl, 4-methanesulfonyl-phenyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclohexyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexenyl, and cyclopentanylyl.

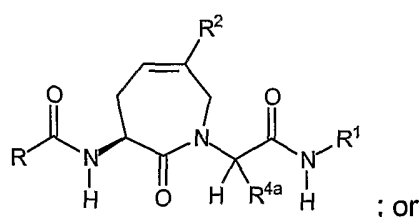
9. A compound according to any of Claims 1-7 wherein R is a substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl unit selected from the group consisting of pyridin-2-yl, pyridin-3-yl, pyridin-4-yl, 3-chloropyridin-2-yl, 4-chloropyridin-2-yl, 5-chloropyridin-2-yl, 6-chloropyridin-2-yl, 3-methylpyridin-3-yl, 4-methylpyridin-3-yl, 5-methylpyridin-3-yl, vinyl pyridin-4-yl, vinyl pyridin-3-yl, thiophen-3-yl, thiophen-2-yl, pyrimidin-2-yl, pyrimidin-4-yl, pyrimidin-5-yl, 2-isobutoxy-pyrimidin-4-yl, 2-isobutylaminopyrimidin-4-yl, 2-phenoxy-pyrimidin-4-yl, 2-ethyl-5-methyl-2*H*-pyrazol-3-yl, 2,4-dimethyl-thiazol-5-yl, 5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl, 1*H*-imidazol-2-yl, [1,2,3]thiadiazol-5-yl, furan-2-yl, furan-3-yl, 4,5-dimethyl-2-furanyl, 5-bromo-2-furanyl, 2-(phenylamino)pyrimidin-4-yl, quinolin-2-yl, quinolin-3-yl, quinolin-4-yl, quinolin-5-yl, quinolin-8-yl, isoquinolin-1-yl, isoquinolin-3-yl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-quinolin-2-yl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-quinolin-3-yl, benzofuran-2-yl, benzofuran-3-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1*H*-indol-5-yl, benzo[*b*]thiophen-5-yl, benzo[*b*]thiophen-3-yl, benzo[*b*]thiophen-2-yl, 3*H*-benzotriazol-5-yl, 1-methyl-1*H*-indol-2-yl, 3*H*-benzimidazol-5-yl, 4-methoxy-quinolin-2-yl, thieno[2,3-*b*]thiophen-2-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, piperidin-1-yl, piperidin-4-yl, and piperazin-1-yl.

10. A compound according to any of Claims 1-9 having the formula:

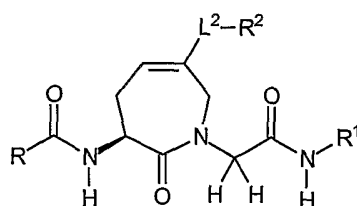
i)



ii)



iii)



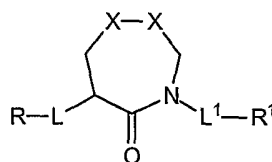
11. A compound according to any of Claims 1-10 wherein $-L^2R^2$ is selected from:

- i) benzyl, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{SH}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{SC}_6\text{H}_5$ and $-\text{CH}_2\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$;
- ii) phenyl, 4-isopropylphenyl, 4-pentylphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 2-methylphenyl, 3-methylphenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 2-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, and 4-methoxyphenyl;
- iii) phenyl, 4-isopropylphenyl, 4-pentylphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 2-methylphenyl, 3-methylphenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 2-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, and 4-methoxyphenyl;
- iv) $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCOC}_6\text{H}_5$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}[4\text{-CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4]$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4\text{-}n\text{-pentylC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(2\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(3\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(2\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(3\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(2\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(3\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, and $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCO}(4\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$; or
- v) $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}\text{SO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}\text{SO}_2(4\text{-}n\text{-pentylC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}\text{SO}_2(2\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}\text{SO}_2(3\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}\text{SO}_2(4\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}\text{SO}_2(2\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, -

$\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(3\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(4\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(2\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(3\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$, and $-\text{CH}_2\text{NHSO}_2(4\text{-OCH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$.

12. A pharmaceutical composition comprising:

- A) an effective amount of one or more compounds, including all enantiomeric and diastereomeric forms and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, said compound having the formula:



wherein each X is independently selected from:

- i) $-\text{C}(\text{W})_2-$;
- ii) $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$;
- iii) $-\text{NR}^2-$;
- iv) $-\text{S}-$;
- v) $-\text{S}(\text{O})-$;
- vi) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- vii) two units, one from each adjacent X unit, can be taken together to form a substituted or unsubstituted double bond having the formula $-\text{CW}=\text{CW}-$; wherein each W is hydrogen or a unit having the formula $-(\text{L}^2)_j-\text{R}^2$, the index j is 0 or 1;

R is a carbocyclic or heterocyclic aryl ring;

R¹ is a cysteine trap;

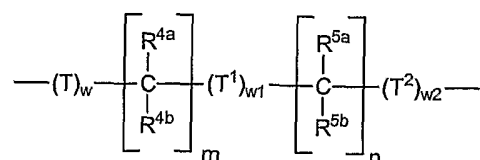
each R² is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) a hydrocarbyl unit having the formula: $-\text{C}(\text{R}^3)_2[\text{CH}=\text{CH}]_q\text{R}^3$;
- iii) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^3$;
- iv) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{AR}^3$;
- v) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})[\text{C}(\text{R}^3)_2]_p[\text{CH}=\text{CH}]_q\text{R}^3$;
- vi) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- vii) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{NR}^3\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- viii) $-\text{CN}$;

- xix) $-\text{CF}_3$;
- x) $-\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xi) $-\text{NR}^3\text{CN}$;
- xii) $-\text{NR}^3\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^3$;
- xiii) $-\text{NR}^3\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xiv) $-\text{NHN}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xv) $-\text{NHOR}^3$;
- xvi) $-\text{NO}_2$;
- xvii) $-\text{OR}^3$;
- xviii) $-\text{OCF}_3$;
- xix) $-\text{F}$, $-\text{Cl}$, $-\text{Br}$, or $-\text{I}$;
- xx) $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$;
- xxi) $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$;
- xxii) $-\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xxiii) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^3$;
- xxiv) $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^3)\text{R}^3$;
- xxv) $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^3)_2$;
- xxvi) and mixtures thereof;

each R^3 is independently hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{20} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C_6 - C_{20} aryl, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl; Z is $-\text{O}-$, $-\text{S}-$, $-\text{NR}^3-$, and mixtures thereof; M is hydrogen, or a salt forming cation; the index p is from 0 to 12; the index q is from 0 to 12;

L , L^1 , and L^2 are each independently a linking group having the formula:



T , T^1 , and T^2 are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) $-\text{NR}^6-$;
- ii) $-\text{O}-$;

- iii) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- iv) $-\text{NR}^6\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- v) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^6-$; and
- vi) mixtures thereof;

R^6 is hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{10} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, C_6 - C_{10} aryl, C_7 - C_{12} alkylenearyl, and mixtures thereof; the indices w , w^1 , and w^2 are each independently 0 or 1;

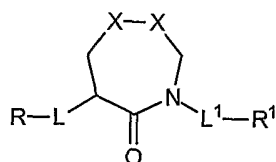
R^{4a} , R^{4b} , R^{5a} , and R^{5b} are each independently:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) C_1 - C_4 linear, branched, and cyclic alkyl;
- iii) R^{4a} and R^{4b} or R^{5a} , and R^{5b} can be taken together to form a carbonyl unit;
- iv) two R^{4a} or two R^{4b} units from adjacent carbon atoms or two R^{5a} or two R^{5b} units from adjacent carbon atoms can be taken together to form a double bond; and
- v) mixtures thereof;

the index m is from 0 to 5; the index n is from 0 to 5; and

B) the balance one or more pharmaceutically acceptable excipients.

13. A method for controlling one or more interleukin- 1β converting enzyme inhibitor mediated or interleukin- 1β converting enzyme inhibitor modulated mammalian diseases or conditions, said method comprising the step of administering to a human or higher mammal and effective amount of a composition comprising one or more compounds, including all enantiomeric and diastereomeric forms and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, said compound having the formula:



wherein each X is independently selected from:

- i) $-\text{C}(\text{W})_2-$;
- ii) $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$;
- iii) $-\text{NR}^2-$;

iv) $-S-$;

v) $-S(O)-$;

vi) $-S(O)_2-$;

vii) two units, one from each adjacent X unit, can be taken together to form a substituted or unsubstituted double bond having the formula $-CW=CW-$; wherein each W is hydrogen of a unit having the formula $-(L^2)_j-R^2$, the index j is 0 or 1; R is a carbocyclic or heterocyclic aryl ring;

R^1 is a cysteine trap;

each R^2 is independently selected from the group consisting of:

i) hydrogen;

ii) a hydrocarbyl unit having the formula: $-[C(R^3)_2]_p(CH=CH)_qR^3$;

iii) $-C(=Z)R^3$;

iv) $-C(=Z)AR^3$;

v) $-C(=Z)[C(R^3)_2]_p(CH=CH)_qR^3$;

vi) $-C(=Z)N(R^3)_2$;

vii) $-C(=Z)NR^3N(R^3)_2$;

viii) $-CN$;

xix) $-CF_3$;

x) $-N(R^3)_2$;

xi) $-NR^3CN$;

xii) $-NR^3C(=Z)R^3$;

xiii) $-NR^3C(=Z)N(R^3)_2$;

xiv) $-NHN(R^3)_2$;

xv) $-NHOR^3$;

xvi) $-NO_2$;

xvii) $-OR^3$;

xviii) $-OCF_3$;

xix) $-F$, $-Cl$, $-Br$, or $-I$;

xx) $-SO_3M$;

xxi) $-OSO_3M$;

xxii) $-SO_2N(R^3)_2$;

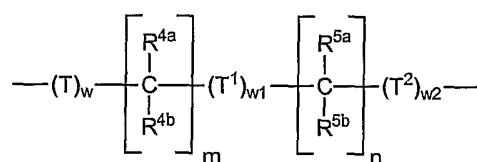
xxiii) $-SO_2R^3$;

xxiv) $-P(O)(OR^3)R^3$;

xxv) $-P(O)(OR^3)_2$;

xxvi) and mixtures thereof;

each R^3 is independently hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{20} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C_6 - C_{20} aryl, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl; Z is $-O-$, $-S-$, $-NR^3-$, and mixtures thereof; M is hydrogen, or a salt forming cation; the index p is from 0 to 12; the index q is from 0 to 12; L, L^1 , and L^2 are each independently a linking group having the formula:



T , T^1 , and T^2 are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) $-NR^6-$;
- ii) $-O-$;
- iii) $-S(O)_2-$;
- iv) $-NR^6S(O)_2-$;
- v) $-S(O)_2NR^6-$; and
- vi) mixtures thereof;

R^6 is hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{10} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, C_6 - C_{10} aryl, C_7 - C_{12} alkylenearyl, and mixtures thereof; the indices w , w^1 , and w^2 are each independently 0 or 1;

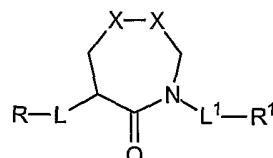
R^{4a} , R^{4b} , R^{5a} , and R^{5b} are each independently:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) C_1 - C_4 linear, branched, and cyclic alkyl;
- iii) R^{4a} and R^{4b} or R^{5a} , and R^{5b} can be taken together to form a carbonyl unit;
- iv) two R^{4a} or two R^{4b} units from adjacent carbon atoms or two R^{5a} or two R^{5b} units from adjacent carbon atoms can be taken together to form a double bond; and
- v) mixtures thereof;

the index m is from 0 to 5; the index n is from 0 to 5.

14. A method for controlling osteoporosis in humans or higher mammals, said method comprising the step of administering to a human or higher mammal and

effective amount of a composition comprising one or more compounds, including all enantiomeric and diastereomeric forms and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, said compound having the formula:



wherein each X is independently selected from:

- i) $-\text{C}(\text{W})_2-$;
 - ii) $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$;
 - iii) $-\text{NR}^2-$;
 - iv) $-\text{S}-$;
 - v) $-\text{S}(\text{O})-$;
 - vi) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
 - vii) two units, one from each adjacent X unit, can be taken together to form a substituted or unsubstituted double bond having the formula $-\text{CW}=\text{CW}-$; wherein each W is hydrogen of a unit having the formula $-(\text{L}^2)_j-\text{R}^2$, the index j is 0 or 1;
- R is a carbocyclic or heterocyclic aryl ring;

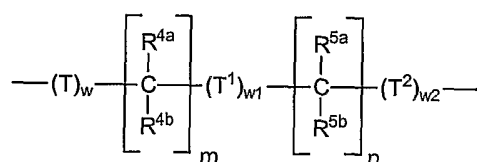
R¹ is a cysteine trap;

each R² is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) a hydrocarbyl unit having the formula: $-\text{C}(\text{R}^3)_2]_p(\text{CH}=\text{CH})_q\text{R}^3$;
- iii) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^3$;
- iv) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{AR}^3$;
- v) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})[\text{C}(\text{R}^3)_2]_p(\text{CH}=\text{CH})_q\text{R}^3$;
- vi) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- vii) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{NR}^3\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- viii) $-\text{CN}$;
- xix) $-\text{CF}_3$;
- x) $-\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xi) $-\text{NR}^3\text{CN}$;
- xii) $-\text{NR}^3\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^3$;
- xiii) $-\text{NR}^3\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;

- xiv) $-\text{NHN}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xv) $-\text{NHOR}^3$;
- xvi) $-\text{NO}_2$;
- xvii) $-\text{OR}^3$;
- xviii) $-\text{OCF}_3$;
- xix) $-\text{F}$, $-\text{Cl}$, $-\text{Br}$, or $-\text{I}$;
- xx) $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$;
- xxi) $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$;
- xxii) $-\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{R}^3)_2$;
- xxiii) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^3$;
- xxiv) $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^3)\text{R}^3$;
- xxv) $-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^3)_2$;
- xxvi) and mixtures thereof;

each R^3 is independently hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{20} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C_6 - C_{20} aryl, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic, C_1 - C_{20} substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl; Z is $-\text{O}-$, $-\text{S}-$, $-\text{NR}^3-$, and mixtures thereof; M is hydrogen, or a salt forming cation; the index p is from 0 to 12; the index q is from 0 to 12; L, L^1 , and L^2 are each independently a linking group having the formula:



T , T^1 , and T^2 are each independently selected from the group consisting of:

- i) $-\text{NR}^6-$;
- ii) $-\text{O}-$;
- iii) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- iv) $-\text{NR}^6\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$;
- v) $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^6-$; and
- vi) mixtures thereof;

R^6 is hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_{10} linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, C_6 - C_{10} aryl, C_7 - C_{12} alkylenearyl, and mixtures thereof; the indices w, w^1 , and w^2 are each independently 0 or 1;

R^{4a} , R^{4b} , R^{5a} , and R^{5b} are each independently:

- i) hydrogen;
- ii) C_1 - C_4 linear, branched, and cyclic alkyl;
- iii) R^{4a} and R^{4b} or R^{5a} , and R^{5b} can be taken together to form a carbonyl unit;
- iv) two R^{4a} or two R^{4b} units from adjacent carbon atoms or two R^{5a} or two R^{5b} units from adjacent carbon atoms can be taken together to form a double bond; and
- v) mixtures thereof;

the index m is from 0 to 5; the index n is from 0 to 5.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/US 03/18367

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 A61K31/55 C07D405/12 C07D405/14 C07D417/12 C07D417/14
C07D409/14 C07K5/02 A61K31/554 A61P29/00 A61P19/10

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 7 C07D C07K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

INSPEC, EPO-Internal, PAJ, WPI Data, BEILSTEIN Data, CHEM ABS Data

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	KARANEWSKY D S ET AL: "Conformationally constrained inhibitors of caspase-1 (interleukin-1beta converting enzyme) and of the human CED-3 homologue caspase-3 (CPP32, APOPAIN)" BIOORGANIC & MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS, OXFORD, GB, vol. 8, no. 19, 6 October 1998 (1998-10-06), pages 2757-2762, XP004139615 ISSN: 0960-894X scheme 2 page 1; examples 5D-5E; table 1 ----- -/--	1,3-5,8, 12-14

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

- *A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- *E* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- *L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- *O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- *P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- *T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- *X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- *Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- *&* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search 28 August 2003	Date of mailing of the international search report 24/09/2003
Name and mailing address of the ISA European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016	Authorized officer Gavriliu, D

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 03/18367

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	US 5 847 135 A (GOLEC JULIAN M C ET AL) 8 December 1998 (1998-12-08) column 2, line 45 -column 3, line 46 column 13, line 34 -column 28, line 65 column 36, line 30-41 column 63, line 35 -column 64, line 65 column 183 -column 185 ----	1,3-5,8, 12-14
X	PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN vol. 1998, no. 14, 31 December 1998 (1998-12-31) & JP 10 251295 A (ONO PHARMACEUT CO LTD), 22 September 1998 (1998-09-22) abstract ----	1,3,4,8, 12-14
X	US 6 136 834 A (OHNO HIROYUKI ET AL) 24 October 2000 (2000-10-24) column 1, line 25 -column 17, line 8; examples 3,4,18-20,24; tables 4-6,20-25,38,39,48-51,66,67 ----	1,3,4,8, 12-14
X	EP 0 761 680 A (ONO PHARMACEUTICAL CO) 12 March 1997 (1997-03-12) page 1, line 20 -page 13, line 10; examples 5,6; tables 4-6,19-24,27,28,35,36,45-48,64,65 ----	1,3,4,8, 12-14
A	WO 98 24804 A (GOLEC JULIAN M C ;ROBIDOUX ANDREA L C (US); WANNAMAKER MARION W (U) 11 June 1998 (1998-06-11) page 1, line 5-27; claims 1,12-33 -----	1-14

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.2

The initial phase of the search revealed a very large number of documents relevant to the issue of novelty. So many documents were retrieved that it is impossible to determine which parts of the claims may be said to define subject-matter for which protection might legitimately be sought (Article 6 PCT). For these reasons, a meaningful search over the whole breadth of the claims is impossible. Consequently, the search has been restricted to the compounds as claimed in claim 1, but for which R1 is either the structure as defined in claim 3 or the structure as defined in claim 5 having G=OH. Moreover it is noted that the application refers to compounds containing as moiety R1 a "cysteine trap" (see claim 1). "Cysteine trap" is a functional definition of R which is unclear.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US 03/18367

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:

Although claims 13-14 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☒ Claims Nos.: -
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 03/18367

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
US 5847135	A	08-12-1998	US 5656627 A	12-08-1997
			US 5756466 A	26-05-1998
			AP 797 A	07-01-2000
			AU 709114 B2	19-08-1999
			AU 2944695 A	15-01-1996
			BG 63634 B1	31-07-2002
			BG 101130 A	29-08-1997
			BR 9508051 A	21-10-1997
			CA 2192089 A1	28-12-1995
			CN 1159196 A	10-09-1997
			CZ 9603698 A3	11-06-1997
			EP 0784628 A1	23-07-1997
			FI 965036 A	14-02-1997
			HU 76622 A2	28-10-1997
			IN 181338 A1	16-05-1998
			IN 183119 A1	11-09-1999
			JP 10504285 T	28-04-1998
			NO 965365 A	17-02-1997
			NZ 289560 A	29-09-1999
			PL 318220 A1	26-05-1997
			SK 160996 A3	10-09-1997
			TW 509698 B	11-11-2002
			WO 9535308 A1	28-12-1995
			US 5716929 A	10-02-1998
			US 6103711 A	15-08-2000
			US 5973111 A	26-10-1999
			US 2002099042 A1	25-07-2002
			US 6025147 A	15-02-2000
			ZA 9504988 A	17-12-1996
JP 10251295	A	22-09-1998	NONE	
US 6136834	A	24-10-2000	EP 0900791 A1	10-03-1999
			WO 9724339 A1	10-07-1997
			US 6376484 B1	23-04-2002
EP 0761680	A	12-03-1997	EP 0761680 A2	12-03-1997
			JP 9136878 A	27-05-1997
			US 5710153 A	20-01-1998
WO 9824804	A	11-06-1998	AU 7624798 A	29-06-1998
			EP 0942925 A2	22-09-1999
			JP 2001506986 T	29-05-2001
			WO 9824804 A2	11-06-1998
			US 6350741 B1	26-02-2002